



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

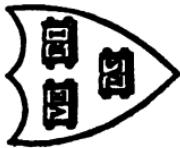


Edue T 5378.85.452

13.11.14.65  
ALFRED G. Langley.

No. 805  
Aug 25<sup>th</sup> '65

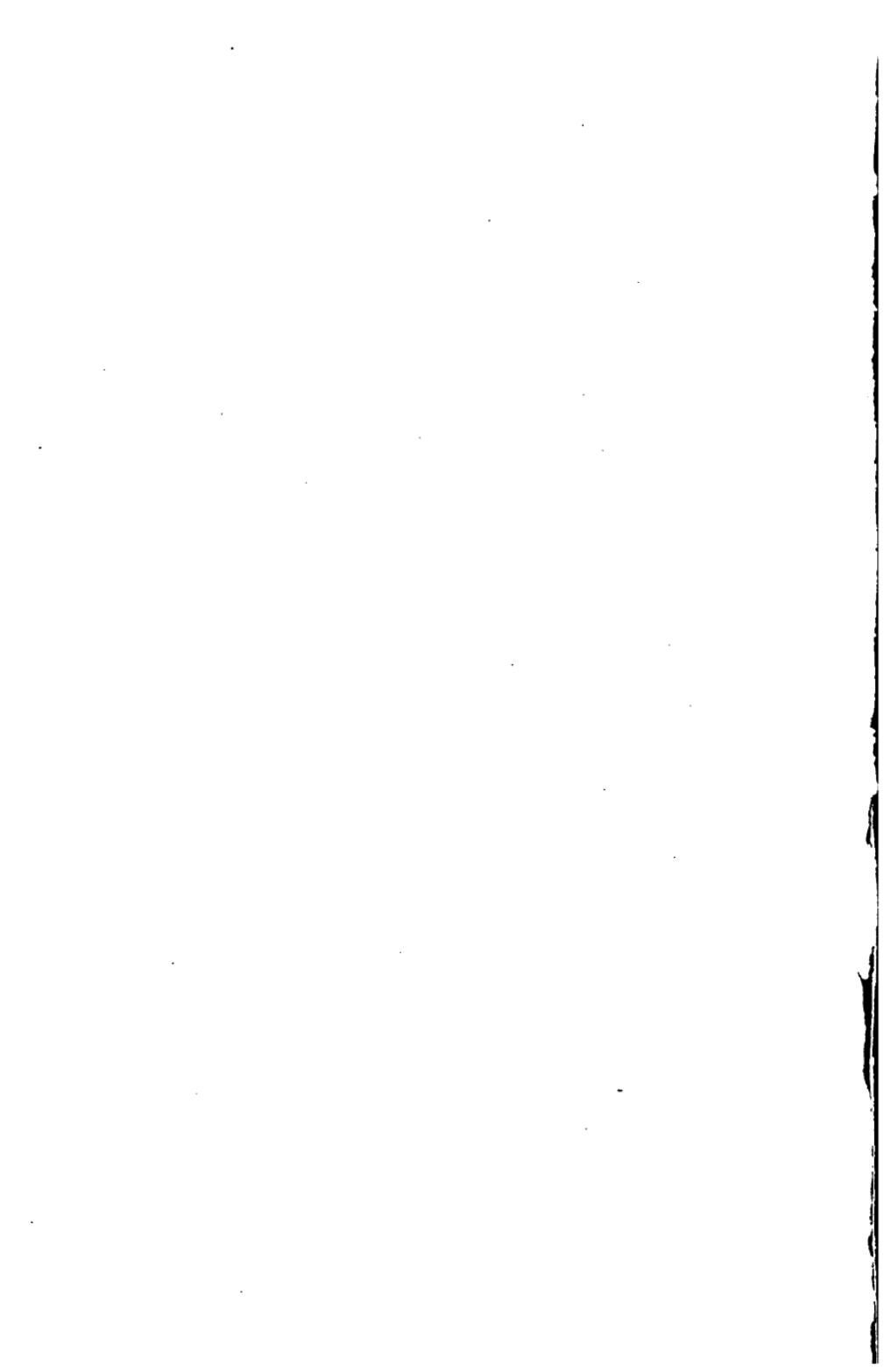
Harvard College  
Library



By Exchange



3 2044 102 784 691



A SYSTEM  
OF  
MORAL SCIENCE

BY

LAURENS P. HICKOK, D.D., LL.D.

REVISED

WITH THE CO-OPERATION OF

JULIUS H. SEELYE, D.D., LL.D.,  
PRESIDENT OF AMHERST COLLEGE.



BOSTON:  
PUBLISHED BY GINN, HEATH, & CO.  
1885.

*Educ T 5378.85.452*  
✓

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
BY EXCHANGE, FROM  
BROWN UNIVERSITY LIBRARY  
NOV 7 1933

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1880, by  
LAURENS P. HICKOK,  
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

*Press of Berwick & Smith, 118 Purchase Street.*

## P R E F A C E.

---

SCIENCE subjects all the facts it uses to a controlling law, and by this law binds all its facts into an orderly system. No elements, however abundant, can become a philosophy without their determining principle.

Moral Science must conform to this condition, and, moreover, must find its principle within the spiritual part of man's being. Nature, through all her successions, can reach no absolute rule, and can bind relatively only, according to her connections as found in experience. Her highest appeal is to self-interest, and can never awaken the feeling of spiritual worthiness. With such consequences, it is prudent to take such a direction; for the great revolving wheel will crush those who cross its course. But the spiritual is the supernatural; and nature must be for this, not this for nature. The moral law is above nature, not taken from nature. The virtuous man must say, "I am thus, and I live thus, because this only is worthy of my spiritual being;" not at all, "I stand here and do this, because otherwise the ongoings of nature would torment me."

The following work has been prosecuted under the full conviction of such a twofold demand. Only expediency, and not

morality can be, if the ultimate rule of life be taken from natural consequences, and not from spiritual imperatives ; and with such spiritual rule there cannot even then be science, and in this a *system* of morals, unless all the elements used are bound up in it. But while the steady design has been to attain and keep prominent the spiritual principle, and also to combine all the parts in this principle, there has been no anxiety to exhaust all the facts which belong to the field of morals, nor is there the pretension that even all the important facts have been here gathered and classified. A wide occasion still remains for extending the application and circumscription of the principle, though it is with great confidence assumed, that the principle here applied will be found adequate to determine every virtue, and to detect every vice, and to give to them their proper arrangement in a system of morals. The science is incomplete, not in its principles, but only in not collecting every fact.

Very little regard has been paid to questions of casuistry. The principle being given, and plain instances of its application, all has been effected that is profitable. To take complicated cases, and resolve doubts whether such ambiguous facts come within the principle, would give little instruction of general use. Ninety-nine such cases of doubt might be correctly solved, and yet the hundredth would have its own peculiarities not at all touched in any former solution. The good sense of every man must do this work for him as best it may, by his own application of the principle to the case, and not by any rules which can be taught him, and which he may lay up in memory for use on common occasions. With-

out the wit to apply, the rules would be wholly useless ; and with that, the man will do very well without any scholastic rules. He will ordinarily solve the original doubt easier than he can settle just what other cases are like the present.

This System of Moral Science is designed as a Text-Book for College study. The aim has been to make it as concise as clearness would admit ; and this has been connected with the full persuasion that no labor of the teacher can give to the student a dispensation from close thought and hard study, if he would attain to any adequate apprehension of the groundwork of moral science, and comprehend the completeness of the system. The kindness of DR. TAYLER LEWIS is gratefully acknowledged for important suggestions made in the process of its preparation. It is published in the belief that something like it is greatly needed.

## PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION.

---

SUCH was the Preface to the first Edition of the Moral Science, in its original form, and it is put here in its present connection as appropriately as it was then. A quarter of a century has since passed, within which the System of Moral Science has been widely taught and studied, and its use continues still undiminished. There occurs, however, good occasion for a revision of the work, making some additions to it, transpositions of some parts, and giving to others a clearer mode of expression. The ultimate Rule of right has been deemed obscure to some, and thought to involve a self-contradiction by others, but it is now so presented as scarcely to admit of partial or mistaken apprehension. There has been a more complete consideration of the general questions of the state and of state authority, with more particular reference to punishment, property, taxation, representation, religion, and education; and the claims of morality in such matters have been more explicitly stated and applied. Old and New Testament views of domestic slavery have been put in connection with what reason teaches, and as the institution is now abolished in our Government, the whole may the more effectually minister to Universal Emancipation. With these considerable alterations, the still unchanged principle runs through and unites the whole work as before, and thus with a different Book there yet is not a different System of Moral Science.

## CONTENTS.

---

INTRODUCTION. THE SPECIAL PROVINCE OF MORAL SCIENCE . .	PAGE. 13
CHAP. I. DIFFERENT THEORIES OF THE ULTIMATE RULE IN MORALS . . . . .	23
CHAP. II. THE ULTIMATE RULE OF RIGHT . . . . .	30
CHAP. III. THE ESSENTIAL ATTRIBUTES OF THE ULTIMATE RIGHT	32
CHAP. IV. GENERAL METHOD . . . . .	38

---

## FIRST PART.

### PURE MORALITY.

I. THE ESSENCE OF ALL VIRTUE . . . . .	41
II. THERE ARE MANY PARTICULAR VIRTUES . . . . .	43

#### I. DUTIES TO MANKIND.

CHAP. I. I. PERSONAL DUTIES. <i>Self-control</i> . . . . .	45
--	----

##### General Maxim. BEAR AND FORBEAR.

##### Particular Maxims.

1. <i>Do thyself no harm</i> . . . . .	46
1. Maiming . . . . .	46
2. Self-torture . . . . .	47
3. Suicide . . . . .	48
4. Self-defence . . . . .	48
2. <i>Keep your body under</i> . . . . .	49
1. Intemperance . . . . .	50
2. Licentiousness . . . . .	51
3. Ambition . . . . .	52
4. Covetousness . . . . .	52

	PAGE.
<b>3. Rule your own spirit. . . . .</b>	<b>53</b>
1. Servility . . . . .	54
2. Vanity . . . . .	55
3. Jealousy . . . . .	56
4. False Honor . . . . .	57
5. Gambling . . . . .	58
<b>CHAP. II. I. PERSONAL DUTIES. <i>Self-culture</i> . . . . .</b>	<b>58</b>
General Maxim. SECURE A COMPLETE SELF-DEVELOPMENT.	
Particular Maxims.	
1. <i>Grow in Stature</i> . . . . .	59
1. Diet . . . . .	60
2. Dress . . . . .	61
3. Exercise . . . . .	62
4. Cleanliness . . . . .	63
2. <i>Grow in Practical Knowledge</i> . . . . .	63
1. Stupidity . . . . .	65
2. Heedlessness . . . . .	66
3. Rashness . . . . .	67
4. Credulity . . . . .	67
5. Skepticism . . . . .	68
6. Destiny . . . . .	68
3. <i>Grow in Rational Wisdom</i> . . . . .	69
1. Taste . . . . .	70
2. Science . . . . .	70
3. Morality . . . . .	71
<b>CHAP. III. II. RELATIVE DUTIES. <i>Kindness</i> . . . . .</b>	<b>72</b>
General Maxim. DO GOOD TO ALL MEN AS YE HAVE OPPORTUNITY.	
Particular Maxims.	
1. <i>Owe no man any thing</i> . . . . .	73
1. Honesty . . . . .	74
2. Reciprocity . . . . .	75
3. Monopoly . . . . .	75
2. <i>Give to the Poor</i> . . . . .	76
1. Charity . . . . .	77
2. Obduracy . . . . .	78
3. Sentimentality . . . . .	78

## CONTENTS.

ix

	PAGE.
<i>3. Be ye thankful</i> . . . . .	79
1. Gratitude . . . . .	80
2. Insolence . . . . .	80
3. Peevishness . . . . .	81
 CHAP. IV. II. RELATIVE DUTIES. <i>Respect</i> . . . . .	 82
General Maxim. HONOR ALL MEN.	
Particular Maxims.	
1. <i>Be ye courteous</i> . . . . .	83
1. Arrogance . . . . .	84
2. Scorn . . . . .	84
3. Ridicule . . . . .	85
4. Vulgarity . . . . .	86
2. <i>Deal justly with all men</i> . . . . .	87
1. Assaulting . . . . .	88
2. Defrauding . . . . .	88
3. Lying . . . . .	89
3. <i>Sustain thy neighbor's good name</i> . . . . .	90
1. Slander . . . . .	91
2. Libel . . . . .	92
3. Censoriousness . . . . .	93
4. <i>Be obedient to Government</i> . . . . .	94
1. Subjection . . . . .	95
2. Tribute . . . . .	96
3. Service . . . . .	96
 II. DUTIES TO OTHER THAN MANKIND.	
 CHAP. V. I. DUTIES TO NATURE . . . . .	 97
General Maxim. USE BUT NOT ABUSE NATURE.	
Particular Maxims.	
1. <i>Not wantonly to mar nature</i> . . . . .	98
2. <i>Convert nature to thy use</i> . . . . .	99
3. <i>Beautify and perfect nature</i> . . . . .	99
4. <i>Explore nature scientifically</i> . . . . .	100
5. <i>Use nature as a discipline in virtue</i> . . . . .	100

	PAGE.
CHAP. VI. II. DUTIES TO GOD . . . . .	101
General Maxim. "WORSHIP GOD."	
Particular virtues.	
1. <i>Reverence</i> . . . . .	102
2. <i>Godly Fear</i> . . . . .	103
3. <i>Humility</i> . . . . .	104

---

## SECOND PART.

### POSITIVE AUTHORITY.

I. OCCASION FOR POSITIVE AUTHORITY . . . . .	107
II. PECULIARITY OF AUTHORITY . . . . .	109

### FIRST DIVISION.

#### CIVIL GOVERNMENT.

CHAP. I. THE STATE . . . . .	111
CHAP. II. THE STATE REQUIRES A GOVERNMENT . . . . .	115
CHAP. III. THE RECTITUDE OF STATE AUTHORITY . . . . .	121
I. THE POINT IN WHICH SOVEREIGNTY SHOULD BE PLACED . . . . .	121
CHAP. IV. II. THE LINES WITHIN WHICH SOVEREIGNTY SHOULD ACT . . . . .	125
CHAP. V. REWARDS AND PUNISHMENTS . . . . .	130
1. The meaning and ground of punishment . . . . .	130
2. The righteousness of punishment . . . . .	132
3. The degree of punishment . . . . .	133
CHAP. VI. THE POSITION OF THE CITIZEN IN REFERENCE TO THE GOVERNMENT . . . . .	137
1. In some respects beyond civil interference . . . . .	137
2. No right to evade civil law . . . . .	140
3. No right to sympathy against law . . . . .	141
4. The citizen can stand on mere legality . . . . .	141
5. The citizen may righteously expatriate himself . .	143
6. Merit or demerit is as the sanction of law . . . . .	144

## CONTENTS.

xi

	PAGE.
CHAP. VII. THE POSITION OF THE GOVERNMENT IN REFERENCE TO THE CITIZEN . . . . .	146
<i>The Government can be satisfied with nothing but obedience to     its laws . . . . .</i>	147
SEC. I. Judicial Oaths . . . . .	148
SEC. II. Property . . . . .	155
SEC. III. Taxes and Imposts . . . . .	160
SEC. IV. Representation . . . . .	163
SEC. V. Religion . . . . .	163
SEC. VI. Education . . . . .	166
SEC. VII. Internal Improvement . . . . .	170
SEC. VIII. Commerce . . . . .	171
SEC. IX. Postal Arrangements . . . . .	173
SEC. X. Prohibitory Laws . . . . .	173
SEC. XI. Sumptuary, Sanitary, and Poor Laws . .	175
SEC. XII. Weights, Measures, Currency, Interest .	177
SEC. XIII. Revolution . . . . .	181
CHAP. VIII. THE POSITION OF A STATE IN REFERENCE TO OTHERS	184
1. <i>The Sovereignty of each State is independent . . .</i>	184
2. <i>International regulations rest on Pure Morality . .</i>	185
SEC. I. Comity of Nations . . . . .	187
SEC. II. Treaties . . . . .	188
SEC. III. Alliances . . . . .	190
SEC. IV. Confederations . . . . .	190
SEC. V. Republics . . . . .	192
SEC. VI. War . . . . .	195
SEC. VII. A Congress of Nations . . . . .	197

## SECOND DIVISION.

## DIVINE GOVERNMENT.

CHAP. I. GOD'S BEING AND COMMUNION WITH MAN . . . . .	200
CHAP. II. END OF DIVINE LEGISLATION . . . . .	203
CHAP. III. THE PROCESS OF THE DIVINE ADMINISTRATION IN JUSTICE . . . . .	207
CHAP. IV. THE PROCESS OF THE DIVINE ADMINISTRATION IN GRACE . . . . .	218

	PAGE.
CHAP. V.      PROCESS IN GRACE FOR SUSTAINING AUTHORITY . . . . .	223
CHAP. VI.      PROCESS IN GRACE FOR STRONGER INFLUENCES TO LOYALTY . . . . .	229
CHAP. VII.      GENERAL RESULT FROM A GRACIOUS ADMINISTRA- TION . . . . .	237

## THIRD DIVISION.

## PARENTAL GOVERNMENT.

CHAP. I.      THE FAMILY . . . . .	241
CHAP. II.      MARRIAGE . . . . .	245
SEC. I.      The Authority for the Marriage Institution . . . . .	248
SEC. II.      Breach of Marriage Promise . . . . .	249
SEC. III.      Polygamy . . . . .	250
SEC. IV.      Incest . . . . .	251
SEC. V.      Divorce . . . . .	253
CHAP. III.      DUTIES OF PARENTS . . . . .	256
CHAP. IV.      DUTIES OF CHILDREN . . . . .	264
CHAP. V.      DUTIES OF BROTHERS AND SISTERS . . . . .	267
CHAP. VI.      DUTIES OF SERVANTS . . . . .	272
SEC. I.      Voluntary Servitude . . . . .	272
SEC. II.      Involuntary Servitude . . . . .	274
1. <i>The Nature of Domestic Slavery</i> . . . . .	276
2. <i>Righteous Domestic Slavery</i> . . . . .	277
3. <i>Unrighteous Domestic Slavery</i> . . . . .	281

## INTRODUCTION.

---

### THE SPECIFIC GROUND OF MORAL SCIENCE.

MORAL SCIENCE must be preceded by a familiarity with Mental Science. Without an accurate and somewhat profound knowledge of the human mind, there will be no clear discernment of the ground on which a system of morals can rest, and thus no attainment of any stability for the attempted science. Let us, therefore, as a direct and intelligent introduction to the field we are now to explore, gain a clear apprehension of some of the foundation facts in mental philosophy.

Man is compounded of the animal and the rational being. These are so intimately blended, that they together make one existing man, yet the animal can always be distinguished from the rational being, and each can be apprehended in its own peculiar operation without any confusion.

The *animal* part of human nature finds the end of its activity in the gratification of its constitutional appetites, as is evident from the fact that it rests in the attainment of such gratification until some new craving of nature returns. The appetites may be originally of greater or less variety, and may be more or less refined by cultivation; but, in every case the end of animal appetite is the same. Happiness is its highest law, and whether the life be mortal or immortal, it is the life of the brute only.

The *rational* part of man's being owns quite a different law

and finds quite a different end. Its impulses are no promptings of an appetite, but the urgency of a requirement. The animal is impelled by a craving, the rational is inspired by a claim. The difference between these two is very broad. A craving is always going out towards something it can get ; a claim is ever rising towards something it can give, or can be. A craving seeks a self-gratification ; a claim requires a self-surrender, perhaps a self-sacrifice. The self which the craving seeks is not found, but is lost in the very process of its seeking ; while the self which the claim surrenders is not lost, but is found in its very surrender. The animal has thus no true self, and is incapable of self-possession or self-direction ; while to the rational belong the prerogatives and responsibilities of a free person, knowing itself and determining itself. In this knowing of itself is the knowledge also of what is due to itself, and thus of its own law,—a law not laid upon it from without like that of the animal, but written within, and thus a self-law, whose authority is both revealed and justified in the light of what the personal self sees to be due to reason alone. This personal, rational self, knowing itself, and thus possessing or *having itself*, is under the perpetual imperative to *behave*; and while the craving of the animal is intermittent, the rational needs no rest, and its claim knows no cessation.

Such is humanity ; not all animal, and thus wholly the brute ; not all spiritual, and thus altogether an angel ; but both in one,—spirituality incarnate. We can never say of mankind, they are sense *or* spirit ; but must ever affirm, that man is sense *and* spirit. “The law in the members,” and “the law of the mind,” are perpetually interworking through all humanity.

And now it is quite clear that the ground of morality must lie altogether within the sphere of man’s rational and spiritual being. To the animal nothing can ever be due.

No conception of owing any thing, or of that which *ought* to be, can begin, or end, except with what is rational. The animal has no law save happiness ; but this law laid upon the animal from without, carries with it no explanation, and reveals no ground for itself. All that we can possibly learn from its highest generalizations is ever how to satisfy a craving, and never how to fulfil a claim. Why the animal should be happy requires a farther answer than that thus it was made to be ; for to this answer the question, why it was thus made, at once repeats itself ; and to this all the happiness conceivable, or all the adaptations thereunto could give no reply. A spiritual excellency must be apprehended, that may command for its own sake, and find something due to itself in the conscious right of its own intrinsic dignity, or we can find no possible ground for morality.

But even the rational spirit of man is not all ethical. A deeper analysis of the human mind must be effected, or we shall not attain to the province of pure morality, nor be able to give a completed science. The spirit attains other necessary and universal principles than such as control in morals, and we must be able fully to distinguish each in its own grounds, or it will not be possible for us, as ethical philosophers, to determine our proper position.

1. Man, as rational, has the capacity to apprehend the necessary and universal principles which determine Beauty, and can thus apply the rules of Taste in the fine arts ; and hereby he introduces himself into the province of *Aesthetics*.

The word *form* may be used in reference to any thing which can be limited and brought within definite circumscription. When only the limit is regarded, without respect to that which is limited, it is known as *pure form*. We may thus have pure form as mere shape in space, or, in the degrees of intensity, pure form also as mere tone in sound. The blending of forms in space by colors gives figure, and the blending of

forms in sound gives tune. We may thus modify colors in outline to represent any figure, and modulate tones to represent any tune ; and when only the form, without any regard to that which fills it, is apprehended, we shall have pure figure or pure tune.

Now, certain forms of figure or of tone fitly express certain sentiments. We cannot tell why this is so. Indeed, the attempt to tell it would be a palpable absurdity, for we could only tell it in words, and the words themselves are forms. But we accept the truth that every sentiment has its expressive form in some shape or sound appropriate to itself ; and the pure form, when presented, is at once apprehended as the expressive representation of the living sentiment. And herein is determined the entire sphere of the Beautiful. Not at all the matter contained in the form, but the pure form itself, which only the mind's eye and not any organ of the sense can apprehend, is the Beautiful. Nor is all pure form, but only such as gives expression to some rational sentiment, to be apprehended as beauty. The pure form, which represents some emotion of a living being, is an æsthetic object ; and no form, that does not express sentiment, can be of any significance in the fine arts. With this full comprehension, the only adequate and complete definition of beauty is *rational sentiment expressed in form*. When the sentiment thus expressed is carried up to an emotion of the supernatural and the divine, the Beauty also rises and loses itself in the Sublime.

- Here is the province of art. The sculptor gives some living expression in the shaped outline of the statue ; the painter blends his colors into more complicated forms upon the canvas ; the bard throws his entrancing sounds of song upon the ear ; and we apprehend the Beautiful in them all, solely because we have here the living forms in which beauty is. Nature, also, in her thousand shapes and sounds, is perpetually expressing some touching sentiment, and thus throw-

ing beauty all about our paths. Not because nature is an imitation of some higher copy, nor from any surprise and delight that art should be found to imitate nature so well, but, both in nature and art, solely because the mind's eye catches the pure form which is expressive of some rational sentiment, do we awake to the consciousness of the Beautiful or the Sublime.

The rational spirit can itself create its own pure forms, which shall express the rational emotion more full and perfect than can be embodied in any media of nature or of art ; and thus the cultivated genius has his own absolute ideal Beauty, as the highest and purest conception of the rational sentiment in any particular case ; and this he makes his ultimate criterion to judge of any representation in nature or art, and becomes the critic, measuring and estimating every actual form of beauty that he finds, and pronouncing it fine or faulty, as it agrees or fails to agree with this absolute ideal.

The eye and ear are the only organs which give the perceptions that take on these pure living forms, and hence the sight and the hearing are the only senses that can be recognized in the fine arts. But even these organs are of use, only as they may give the phenomenal matter which takes on these pure forms, and so far only has sense at all any part in beauty. The pure form itself is only for the mind's eye, and with which the bodily organ has nothing to do ; and it is wholly by the rational part of man also, that the pure ideal is discerned in which lies the absolute Beauty, and by whose application he criticises all forms of beauty which art or nature may anywhere present to either eye or ear. The absolute Beauty is only in the reason, and all outer beauty is judged and determined by this. It is so far of sense, that its pure forms can only find their expression in some objects of sense ; but the Beauty itself is nothing that the sense gives ; for if the pure form any way express the living sentiment, the taste is quite indifferent

what material object it may be that represents it. That material will be the most desirable which will obtrude itself the least upon the mental vision, and leave the pure form in the most unhindered manner to express the living sentiment.

We have in this the field of *Æsthetics*, which no merely animal eye or ear can enter, inasmuch as it is reason in her freedom which creates the ideal Beauty, and cares nothing for the material part, except merely that it may communicate and preserve the pure living form which is put upon it. This faculty is of the rational part of man, and has an intrinsic excellency which controls the animal appetite for its own end, and will not permit that its beauty should be bartered for bread or any sensual gratification. But though controlling the sense for its own higher end, yet can it not rise to the dignity of an ethical imperative. It controls by taste and not by duty; its retributions are disgust and loathing, not remorse and despair. Its ugliness is not that of vice, and its deformities are not the debasement of guilt. It fills an important province in the domain of the reason, but is wholly separated from morality.

2. Man, as rational, has the capacity to apprehend Truth, and to apply necessary and universal principles in science, and thus to introduce himself into the field of pure *Philosophy*.

All possible diagrams may be constructed in pure space. In these diagrams, skillfully arranged, a succession of intuitive steps may be taken which shall lead out from axioms to the most remote demonstrations. So, also, in the mind's passing from point to point along a mathematical line, it may attain the apprehension of succession in pure time. As this intellectual agency is contemplated as standing in the successive points, and thus giving so many *instants*, or, as moving from one point in the line to the next, and thus giving so many *moments*, all possible pure periods, and in these, all possible pure numbers may be attained. Such pure numbers may be skilfully arranged, in such a variety of ways, as to indicate the results of all arithmetical processes.

In this manner a pure geometry and a pure arithmetic are possible ; and the whole field of mathematical truth lies open. This does not rest upon the experience in sense, but the intellect works out its own figures and numbers, and the mind's eye sees the consecutive steps and apprehends the ultimate conclusion. Because man can thus use pure space and pure time, he can see in his pure constructions necessary and universal truth, and thereby affirm not only what *is*, but what any experience *must be*. The sense has, here, no more relevancy than in the fine arts. The pure mathematical figures may be filled by some matter, just as the pure living forms of beauty may be ; yet the reason regards the matter filling the pure forms as of no importance, and uses it only to retain or communicate the intuitions, while the entire science lies only in the pure figures of the mind's own construction.

And so, also, the phenomena given in sense must be connected in determinate places in space, and determinate periods in time, or they cannot come into any order of experience. They are else a mere rhapsody of appearing and disappearing visions. And such determined order of connection cannot be effected by the senses. The reason must give the notion of permanent substance in which the phenomenal qualities *inhere*, or they could not be determined to their places in the connections of universal space : and must also give the notion of perduring cause to which the phenomenal events *adhere*, or they could not be determined to their periods in the connections of one successive time : and must, further, give the notion of action and re-action through which all passing events *cohere*, or they could not be determined as contemporaneous in one and the same time. The reason determines, not so experience *is*, but so, if there be any experience in space and time, it *must be*. With these pure notions of substance, cause, and counter-causation, as connecting all possible phenomena of the sense, the whole field of pure

physics lies open to us in which the sense has no more importance than in æsthetics and mathematics. The qualities and events constituting a nature of things may be given in such connection ; but whether actually given or not, the philosophy is valid.

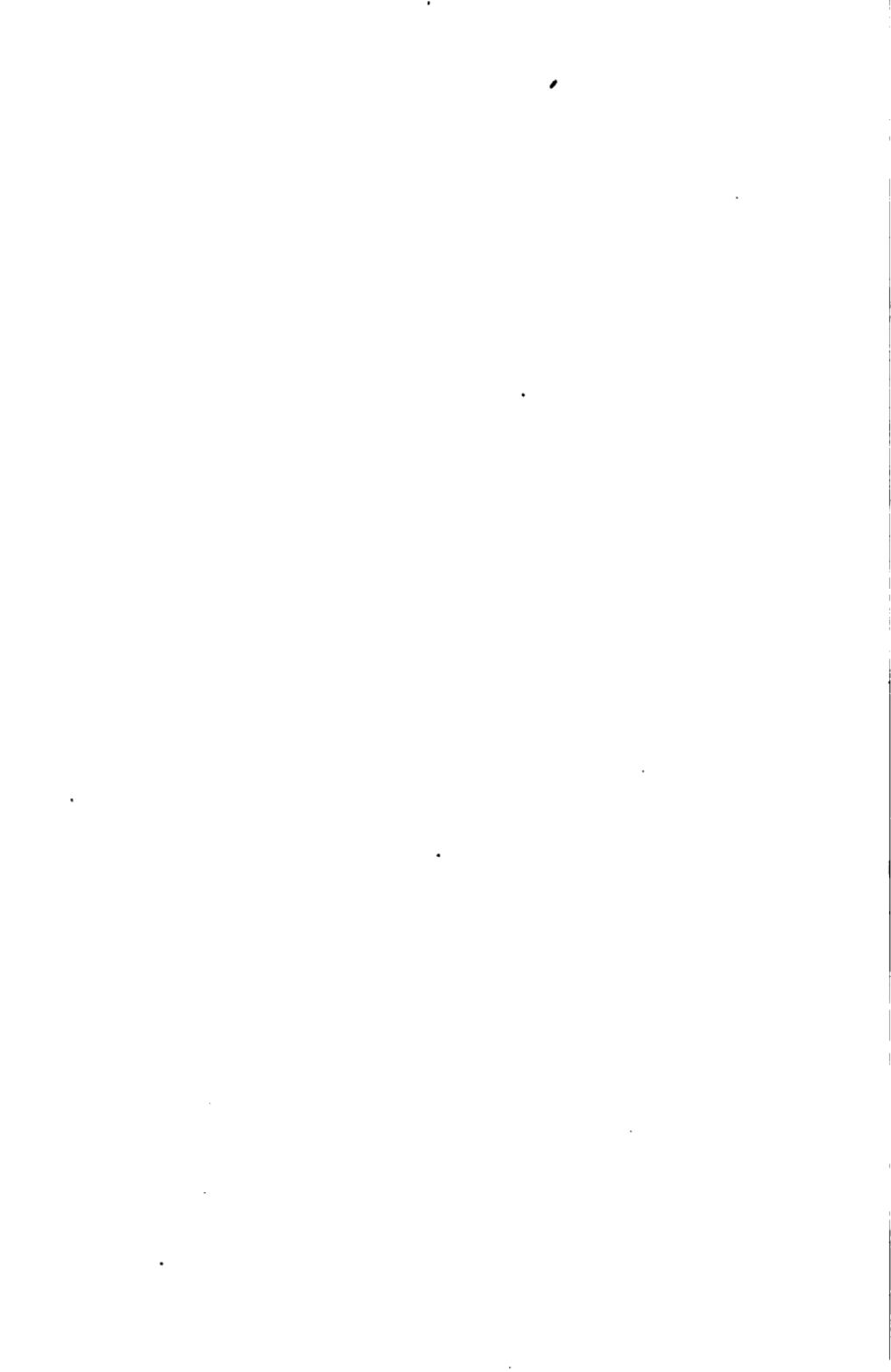
Not then at all in the animal, but only in the rational part of our being, is the field for mathematical and philosophical truth. And this province is also entirely distinct from the field of beauty, though both these belong to the region of the rational, — the field of the beautiful being limited to rational sentiment, and the field of the true being confined to rational principle. In this realm of truth, from the pure love of science, man may freely subject the animal appetites and refuse to prostitute philosophy to any craving of pleasure. He may also withdraw all attention from art, and fully devote himself to science. But while, thus, science is clearly discriminated from the province of taste, it still does not come within the field of morality. The excellency of science, far transcending animal happiness, is still other than the excellence of virtue.

3. The Beautiful and the True would be impossible, if the reason which they express were not other and more than sentiment or principle. Reason knows itself, and in knowing itself it also determines itself, and is thus a person. In this true self-knowledge, in this true personality, is the only adequate disclosure of reason.

Man as rational thus knows himself. He knows himself as rational, as spiritual, and thus as possessing an intrinsic excellence and dignity which is above all price. There is something reverent and awful in his own being, in whose light he finds himself at the same time a sovereign proclaiming a law, and a subject acknowledging the obligation of obedience thereunto. The law is written upon his inner being, and requires him to do what is due to reason, and for no other reason than that it is reason which requires it. The Shekina in his own bosom

compels respect for its majesty and authority, and he feels bound, alone by himself, to sacrifice appetite, and subdue sense, and subject the body to the worthiness of the spirit. He is often made conscious how terrible is the retribution which comes from within him, in the sense of his own degradation and conviction of personal debasement, when he has bowed his soul as a bond-slave to some appetite of the flesh. This discernment is wholly spiritual and not sensual. The animal nature cannot in the least participate therein. The authority itself is wholly in and of the spirit, and it uses the sensible world only as worthy to be subdued and subjected to its own ends. It does not want nature that it may represent its own pure forms within it, like beauty; nor, that it may study its own necessary connections in it, as philosophy; but that by its use of it, it may make the spirit itself more worthy. It is competent to stand in itself, an everlasting law of life, when flesh and sense shall cease, and this mortal shall put on immortality.

Here, then, is a ground upon which we can rest our science, and here exclusively is the field of Morals. This field we are now to explore. Knowing our precise position, we can precisely determine our Moral Philosophy, and therein possess a science from necessary principles, and not a guess from general consequences.



# SYSTEM OF MORAL SCIENCE.

---

## CHAPTER I.

### DIFFERENT THEORIES OF THE ULTIMATE RULE IN MORALS.

“ **W**HERE there is no law there is no transgression ; ” and for the same reason, where there is no law there is no obedience. Law, thus, is essential to all moral action, inasmuch as without it there can be no ethical obligation ; no merit nor demerit, no punishment nor reward. The faculties of moral agency constitute mere capacity for praise or blame, but except some rule be applied, no occasion is given for calling forth this capacity into the attainment of any moral character. The first inquiry for Moral Science is, therefore, after an *ultimate Rule* of life, under whose imperative, moral character may be formed and estimated, and from the authority of which, justification or condemnation may be pronounced.

Such a rule must be apprehended by the subject, and thus promulgated to the conscience, and must be so universal that it may come home in its convictions to the consciousness of the race, otherwise there can be no valid ground for a comprehensive science of Morals. Where, then, is the source of a universal **OUGHT**, which shall press upon the entire conscience of humanity?

Widely different and very conflicting theories have been here advanced ; and as this is so fundamental for the science of morality, the system has of course received its whole character

from its foundation-principles. It is in fact a history of Moral Science, to give a history of the ultimate rules which have been adopted as the ground-work of the many systems which have been elaborated. This wide diversity in reference to the very ground of Moral Science might seem very discouraging to any expectation of a final general agreement, and even to be taken to indicate that all morality is itself very uncertain, since those who study it most contradict each other in their philosophy. But there is much relief in the fact, that the diversity has been mainly in reference to what has been made a matter of speculation, and not in reference so much to the matter of fact as to what is right; and more especially is discouragement removed, when it is known that former discussion has not been useless. Many of these conflicting theories have had their day, and are now numbered among the things that were, with neither teacher nor disciples. A few only now divide the great mass of ethical writers, and the prospect is the more hopeful that the truth shall ere long shine forth too clearly to permit of any radical discrepancy.

It will help us in fixing our convictions of what is the ultimate Rule in morals, if we pass in cursory review some of the more prominent theories which have been advanced by either ancient or more modern philosophical moralists. We will give these in the most concise statement practicable, without any attempt at confirmation or refutation, and leave them by merely specifying their distinctive authors. The simplest statement of the theory is all we need for the present design; and for the more convenient presentation, we may classify them as theories which put the ultimate Rule in something *external* to the mind, and those that find the ultimate Rule in something *within* the mind itself. We shall thus have two classes, which may be termed,

- I. *Objective theories of the Ultimate Moral Rule.*
- II. *Subjective theories of the Ultimate Moral Rule.*

Under the class of *Objective* theories we may put :

1. *The Authority of the State.* Man must live in civil society, and this cannot be sustained without political regulations. The state, through its constituted authorities, legislates, and to this the citizen is bound in unquestioning obedience. The conservation of the public welfare would be impossible, if any subject were permitted to question and resist the civil authority. The man is not to go back of the law and judge of it by some imaginary standard ; the civil authority is ultimate, and the citizen has nothing to do but obey. The whole duty, where the state has legislated, is to read the law and act accordingly. **HOBBS.**

2. *The revealed Will of God.* What God wills is ultimate, simply because he wills it. When this is revealed to man in any way, there is no higher rule by which it can be judged ; but that God has so willed, is in that, and on that account, final. If the position be taken that there must be some principle for the direction of the Divine Will, it is answered that God can have no superior sovereign to his will, but this may make and unmake principles, and create moral truth as well as natural existences. All moral truth originates in the Divine will ; and it is thus, solely because God wills thus. **DES CARTES** and **DYMOND.**

3. *Something inherent in the Nature of Things.* This admits of several modifications, in accordance with what it is in the nature of things, that is put as the ground of the ultimate Rule. (a.) One will say, that there is a *fitness* in things themselves, which lies at the basis of all obligation. There is a "fitness" in returning gratitude for a favor,—in the payment of an honest debt,—in love and honor towards a parent, and homage towards God. This "fitness" in one to be accompanied by the other, is the ultimate ground of obligation, where there is the one to do also the other. **DR. S. CLARKE.** (b.) In all things there is a *truth*, and this seen confers obligation to be regarded and

treated as it is. It is "true" that man is not a post, and this is a valid reason why he should not be treated as a post. It is "true" that he is a rational being, therefore deal with him as such. The Rule is founded in "the truth" of things; all disobedience is somewhere acting out a lie. *WOLLASTON.* (c.) There are certain *relations* between things, in which is found the ultimate Rule. The "relation" of parent and child—of benefactor and beneficiary—of the state and the citizen—of the Creator and creature, is itself the ultimate Rule for the duties enforced. We need only to know the relations, and the duty is seen in them and made up from them. *DR. WAVLAND.* (d.) There is a *beauty* in the union and consent of one mind or heart with the great whole of being, and which may be termed good will to being *in general*, and in this moral beauty is the essence of true virtue. The consent and agreement of heart with being in general is conditional for the beauty, and the love to being in general is not for the beauty in the being, but the love is to the being and the beauty is inherent in such love; and thus the beauty of benevolence or of love to being in general, is the essence of all true virtue. *PRES. EDWARDS.* These may all mean much the same thing; but whatever be understood, they all agree that the ground of the rule is seen in the nature of things.

4. *The highest Happiness.* This assumes that happiness is the only good, and that whatever tends to this is right, and the design to secure this is virtuous. The ultimate Rule of all action must be found in this tendency to promote happiness. The general theory of highest happiness has its modifications constituting distinct systems. (a.) A *purely selfish* system in which pleasure is put as the chief good, and personal enjoyment the only virtue. Inasmuch as the future is altogether uncertain, the highest wisdom is found in making the most of the present, and thus it takes the form of the old perverted Epicurean maxim, "live while you live." (b.) The modifying of all our appetites and desires so as to keep "the golden mean," neither

too lax nor too intense in any inclination. Moderation is the great virtue. The highest happiness, and thus the highest virtue, is by keeping in the midst between two extremes. **ARISTOTLE.** (*c.*) It may take apparently a more *religious* aspect, and assume future eternal happiness as the highest good, and thus denying present gratification for the endless happiness of heaven. **PALEY.** (*d.*) Taking the general conception of *utility*, and referring this to the public, and making the ultimate Rule to be "the greatest good of the greatest number." **BENTHAM.** (*e.*) Putting all under the name of *Benevolence* as the highest good, inasmuch as it blesses both giver and receiver. Man is so made that he finds his highest happiness in promoting the highest happiness of others, and thus beneficence is the highest rule of life. **PRES. DWIGHT and DR. TAYLOR.**

All the above find the highest rule of life in some source external to the mind, and have regard to some object which it is deemed makes the strongest claim upon man, and which is thus the measure of all right as itself the ultimate.

Under the class of *Subjective* theories, we have :

1. *A natural susceptibility to Pride, gratified by Flattery.* Man has many impulses, but among the strongest is that of pride, which induces to self-denial in other things that it may find more than its equivalent in the praise that is returned, and the whole of virtue is found in the vanity that is satisfied by flattery. The many are thus cunningly enslaved by the designing few, who, to reward their patient service and devotion, have invented such terms as loyalty, patriotism, heroism, virtue, religion, etc., and apply them in flattering distinctions to such as are the most subservient and obsequious. Praise is given in barter for freedom, and all moral virtue is but "the offspring of flattery begotten upon pride." **MANDEVILLE.**

2. *An inner reciprocal Sympathy.* All we know of other men, is by referring what we may deem their experience to some similar experience of our own, and finding a sympathy

between us. Just so in morals. We change places in thought with the actor, and if we deem that we should approve of the act as a spectator, we affirm it to be right ; and if we should not so sympathize with it, we affirm it to be wrong. In reference to another's act, we must imagine ourselves to be the actors and him the spectator, and accordingly as it would meet or oppose his sympathy, we affirm the act to be right or wrong. Thus the apprehension of the rule is never direct, but through this reflex sympathy ; and there must be an imagined reciprocity between the actor and the observer of the action, or neither of them could affirm any right or wrong in the action. The capacity to such inner reciprocal sympathy is the sole ground and possibility of morality. *ADAM SMITH.*

3. *An inner Sense, which gives Moral Distinctions.* This has its various modifications. (a.) Amid the other senses with which man is endowed and which give material qualities, he has a distinct and specific sense which apprehends moral distinctions. This perceives a right and wrong as the organic senses perceive colors, sounds, etc. This moral sense is each man's source of all obligation, and to him his measure of all virtue. *SHAFTESBURY and HUTCHESON.* (b.) Virtue and vice in the abstract are nothing, and like all other qualities have their existence only in the percipient. There is thus a universal sentiment, by reason of the original conformation of all minds by one Divine Creator, which approves certain intentions and affections, and disapproves certain others. This universal sentiment, from an original conformation of the human mind, is the ultimate source of all moral truth, and in this is the ultimate Rule of life. It is a mark of the Divine Wisdom and Benevolence that the human race has been made with such conformity of moral sentiments, that substantially the same things are approved and disapproved through all generations. *DR. BROWN.* (c.) An inward revelation as a warning voice, which, though sounding in us is not of us, makes itself to be felt as an awe

and fear of Deity ; and which thus becomes a conscience in all human bosoms, and lies at the source of all morality. An external revelation may also be given as another form of the same admonition ; but this inward awe of the Deity, awakened by this warning voice, and before which we find the whole carnal mind shrinking and retiring, is that which first originates imperatives in the consciousness, and involves all that is moral or religious in the human race. The divinely-awakened reverence and awe of the Supreme Being, first wakes the moral life, and this finds its rule in any form of God's commandments.

F. SCHLEGEL.

4. *An immediate Intuition.* This view supposes the human mind in its rational endowment to have an intuition higher than the immediate perceptions of sense, and which higher intuition immediately apprehends universal and necessary principles in their own light, and among others such also as belong to morality. The organs of sense have no connection with this higher intuition, either directly or remotely, since no reflection upon what is perceived by sense — combining, abstracting, or comparing — can give these necessary principles. The Reason is the organ for their apprehension, and this immediately beholds them. The Ought is thus immediately seen by the reason, and needs and admits of no other explanation than that it is so seen in its own light. The reason sees the right, and that is ultimate and conclusive. The phraseology and application may differ somewhat in different writers, but all of this theory hold substantially to this, that the ultimate right is a dry and pure rational intuition, seen and not felt, — an intellectual object, and not a sentiment or a feeling, — and that this intuitive beholding of the right is its highest affirmation. It is not right, *because* of this or that ; it is immediately seen to be right, and that is the end of it. The right is ultimate in its own intuition, and there cannot be a further explanation when the last is reached. CUDWORTH, KANT, and COLERIDGE.

The review of these varied theories, and what has been already attained in the determining of the particular field of Moral Science, will now enable us the more readily and intelligently to apprehend the ultimate Rule of Right, when the true ground in which it must lie shall be set fully before the mind. Without a detailed examination of these theories, this will at once correct what is erroneous, and fill out what may be incomplete in any of them.

---

## CHAPTER II.

### THE ULTIMATE RULE OF RIGHT.

As our first inquiry in Moral Science is for an ultimate rule of right, let us start the inquiry with a clear view of what we mean by an ultimate rule. Nothing is ultimate where there is any thing beyond. An ultimate, therefore, is not simply the last point our thoughts can reach because they are too feeble to go farther; rather is it the truly last, on which our thoughts rest when they reach it, because they see that there is nothing farther. No fact, therefore, can ever be ultimate; for a fact is something made, and of course beyond it is its maker. An ultimate is unmade. It could never either begin or cease to be. It knows no past nor future, but only ever is. The limitations of space are also as little beyond it as are those of time. It is everywhere as well as everywhen.

An ultimate, therefore, has its ground only in itself, and the light which reveals it is altogether its own. It is both self-supporting and self-evident. It rests upon itself, and the thoughts that reach it rest because itself rests.

But nothing is thus ultimate—nothing is at the same time first and last, and the same yesterday, to-day, and for ever—but

reason. Reason alone supports and declares and is the all-sufficient voucher for itself. We are always seeking for reason ; and while we never rest till the self-sufficient reason is found, when this is found we never seek for any thing beyond. It would be impossible and absurd for us to ask why any three points must be in the same plane, or why it is impossible for a thing to be and at the same time not be, or to ask a reason why a man should do right, since each of these statements is a statement of reason itself, and is therefore self-sufficient and final. To seek for any thing beyond reason would be to seek a reason for reason, which would be the absurdity of seeking for precisely what we already have. Reason must be the inspiration and the end of all our seeking. That this is so appears as soon as we note that the question why, which really voices all our inquiry respecting any thing, simply means, what is the reason for the thing.

An ultimate rule, therefore, must be a reasonable rule. In other words, it must conform to reason, must be worthy of reason, and must reveal its reasonableness in its very statement. But this is not true of any of the rules which have been adduced in the previous chapter. None of these rules can be justified by its bare statement. Why the authority of the state, the revealed will of God, the nature of things, the highest happiness, or any of the subjective rules that were named should require our obedience, could only be shown by showing the reason on which it is supposed to rest. Unless the rule is reasonable it has no authority, and if it is reasonable its authority is beyond dispute. The same is true of every rule that could be named. We inquire for its reasonableness as the ultimate foundation for its authority, and when this is found, and only when this is found, we rest.

The rule, therefore, by which all other rules must be determined is the only ultimate rule. Let us start, then, with that wherein all these other rules must end. We can ask for noth-

ing more, we can be satisfied with nothing less ; the reasonable rule is the right rule, and it is right for no other reason than that it is reasonable.

We use the term right as a substantive and as an adjective. Its exact equivalent as a substantive is reason, and as an adjective is reasonable. The ultimate rule of right is the ultimate rule of reason, and as a rule must be a rule of action, and a rule of right a rule determinative of right action, or the action that ought to be, the simple and sufficient statement of the ultimate rule of right is that a reasonable being ought to act reasonably. This is a rule self-evident and self-sufficient, needing no other ground to support itself or reveal itself than itself. This is the true ultimate ; and as all other rules must come to it for their test, we take it at the outset, and direct all our inquiries by its determinations.

---

### CHAPTER III.

#### ESSENTIAL ATTRIBUTES OF THE ULTIMATE RIGHT.

WE may now unhesitatingly make the following summary statements.

Man is a reasonable being, and the highest claim that can possibly be made upon him is that he act in a way worthy of his rational endowment. As a reasonable being he knows himself, for reason is the true and sole self-knower ; and in this self-knowledge he knows that the claim of reason upon his personal conduct transcends all other claims. It is the consciousness of this claim, it is the recognized presence of an authority which he can neither dethrone nor delude, and which is inalienable from himself, which gives to every man a sense of awe when forced to stand alone with his own spirit.

It is as if another and a divine self scanned and judged every thought and purpose of the active self, and announced the irreversible sentence of self-justification or self-condemnation. Man is thus a law unto himself, and has his judge and executive inseparable from himself. We may call this law and authority, the claim of reason, or constraint of conscience, or inner voice of God ; the true meaning is all the same, that every man is consciously bound to do that and that only which the rational spirit that has been given him sees, in its own rationality, to be due to reason. Herein is the ultimate rule of right, which both includes and measures all human rights and obligations. It is beyond all deductions from experience, and is itself determinative of what experience itself should be. It is amenable to no outer interference, and admits into itself no other consideration, than that it behooves spirit to act worthy of its spirituality, which is but the inner claim of reason itself to act reasonably. The ultimate authority binds universally and absolutely, for no other reason than that it is reason.

With this precise intuition of the ultimate Right, it is of further importance that we apprehend as distinctly some of the attributes which it possesses.

i. It is *simple*. By this is meant that it is wholly uncompounded, and thus incapable of any analysis.

This is manifest from the genesis of the conception itself. We do not attain it from any generalization, nor by any process of degrees which by an accumulation at last constitutes right. We may pass in our analysis of mind from the appetite of the animal to the imperatives of the rational within us, and in the rational may also pass through the sphere of taste and of philosophy up to that of morals ; but we do not carry along with us any conceptions which, in their last complexity, become the conception of the right. We leave each law, of happiness and of beauty and of physical truth, in its own sphere, and only as we come into the sphere where reason

knows itself, and is conscience, do we find the law of right ; and here it stands in its own simplicity as seen by the eye of reason itself.

This is further seen in the impracticability of all analysis of it. No intellectual process can decompose it and show its parts. It may be said, as it has been, that for any action to be right, there must be, 1. Understanding, 2. Free-will, 3. Tendency to universal happiness, 4. Tendency to the individual happiness ; but, though this should be admitted to be a true analysis of right *action*, it is manifestly a mistake to suppose it an analysis of *right* itself. The very first ingredient — an understanding — is of no possible use, but as it is conditional for already perceiving the right. Besides, how know that it would be not right to hold to responsibility without such assumed elements ? The very attempt at analysis convicts itself of carrying along with it the still simple conception.

2. The ultimate right is *immutable*. Ultimate truths are not the product of power, but must themselves condition all exertions of power. Power does not make the principles by which all power must be judged. No possible power can make it right that God, or angel, or man, should act unworthy of their spiritual excellency. Mutability of the ultimate right is thus an *impossibility*.

And still more, to conceive of any change involves the alternative, either that it changes to somewhat that it is not and should not be, and thus changes from a right to that which is not right ; or, that it changes to somewhat that it is not and yet should be, and thus that there was another right determining how the ultimate right should be changed. Mutability of the ultimate right is thus an *absurdity*.

3. The ultimate right is *universal*. As in relation to all ultimate truth, no one can appropriate it and say of it, this is *my* truth ; but that same truth will also be truth for every mind that looks into the same ground, so, eminently of the ultimate

moral right, it is the same to all. In reference to all facts of sense, every man's experience is his own measure. His own sensation is his ultimate rule. The taste of wine, the size of the moon, the sound of a trumpet ; these are what they are to me, and by his own peculiarity of organs all these may be very different to another man. But not thus with rational intuitions. Axioms in mathematics, principles in philosophy, rights in morals, are the same to all minds, when seen in the same grounds. It has sometimes been objected, to the reproach of ethical science, that quite contradictory actions have been deemed right in different ages. The Spartan may have approved of theft, while other people approve of honesty. But the Spartan approved of theft only when it was done so adroitly as to escape detection, and in this only as perfecting the man in the deceits and stratagem of war, which was looked upon as the highest glory of man. The same perverted view, looking into the same ground, would give to all the Spartan justification of theft. But never will there be approbation where the act is viewed in its own light, as the taking by one man that which is not his, from another who owns it. Such an act is unworthy of reason, and is thus an indignity to the man robbed, and a debasement in the thief ; in which light it can receive from all only reprobation. And so with all moral obligations whatever, when followed up to the ultimate principle of debasing the rational spirit, no man can violate the obligation without remorse.

That the ultimate rule is universal, appears further in this, that the character even of the Supreme Being may be determined by it. Were right determined by the will of God, then that will itself would be undetermined in its moral character. But God himself permits and makes the appeal to the ultimate principle, determinative of his own action. "Shall not the Judge of all the earth do right?" "Are not my ways equal?" God perfectly knows his own excellency as Absolute Spirit, and

that which it behooves him to do, and has thus the same Rule of right that is everywhere applicable. We have thus in a universal rule an occasion for a universal system of morals.

A few particulars may be here noticed; some, as direct inferences from what has been already gained.

1. *Rights can never clash with each other.* Reason is ever at one with itself, whether viewed in the personality of the Absolute Spirit, or in that of the finite spirit. That which is due to the rational spirit is ever the measure of obligation, and thus all ethical claims must necessarily adjust themselves in complete harmony, through the ever concurring and according rights of rational personalities. The finite as truly debases itself in all conflict with the absolute, as would the absolute in all subjection to the finite. Reason can never deny itself and put forth unreasonable claims; and hence no rights, of any number or degree of rational beings, can come into any collision with each other. The one rule makes all rights harmonize.

2. *The animal can possibly possess no rights.* So far as we have any knowledge of animals, they are only individual examples of a species. They give no evidence of self-determination, of freedom, of personality, and thus they show nothing which is peculiarly their own. In them the species appears, through them the species is continued, and when they have sufficiently subserved these ends of the species, they are cast aside and left to perish. Individuals in the animal world appear simply as passive objects upon which the species exerts its power, and who fulfil its design without any purpose or agency of their own. They have, therefore, no rights, and can have no obligations. Appetites belong to them, but not imperatives.

3. It is desirable here to note *some of the distinctions in mental facts which are used in moral science.*

This self-knowledge of the spirit, or the consciousness of its own spiritual excellency, awakening in man's rational nature an imperative towards that which is due to his own intrinsic

dignity, and which moves in complacency for obedience and in remorse for disobedience, is *conscience*. The capacity, from this imperative of conscience to resist the impulses of appetite, and thus to possess an inherent spring to an alternative when the animal good allures, is *moral agency*. This causality of reason to act even against the cravings of appetite, and thus from the law of what is worthy of itself as ultimate end, is *will* (*liberum arbitrium*), and which wholly differs from animal will (*brutum arbitrium*), that can only go out in executive acts after strongest appetite or highest happiness. When the will keeps in subjection every colliding appetite, and is thus regnant over the whole animal nature, it is *free-will*; when it yields to the animal impulse, so as to make the gratification of appetite, or highest happiness, its ultimate end, and thus puts the whole executive agency under the domination of sense, it is an *enslaved will*. When this capacity of will goes out towards either alternative of happiness or of worthiness as ultimate end, it is *choice*. When this choice of ultimate end is in reference to the highest generalization of all human action, and thus the whole voluntary capacity is disposed either towards the end of the sense or the end of the spirit, i.e., happiness or worthiness, Mammon or God, it is the *moral disposition*, giving permanent moral character. This differs wholly from constitutional bias, sometimes called *natural disposition*, and which results from physical temperament only; having no moral character in itself, except only in its constraint and subjection. When this agency, fixing upon its object as end, is contemplated solely as a subjective state, and not as going forth into overt action, it is *preference*; and when this has respect to objects beyond our reach, it is *wish*. In all these cases, the mental fact is peculiar in its own being, and the word should be carefully used as expressing its own precise meaning. The system is intelligently apprehended, only when its elementary thoughts are distinct, and the terms in which they are expressed are made precise.

## CHAPTER IV.

## GENERAL METHOD.

THE way is now prepared for a Definition and general Method of Moral Science. Morals (*moralis*) and Ethics (*εθικος*) both alike refer to that which pertains to the manners and conduct of persons. A moral act is a personal act, the act of a person or a free will. An act without freedom, an act necessitated, is no moral act, and an agent without a free will is no moral agent. The sphere of morality and the sphere of freedom are not only co-extensive, they are identical. If a man is capable of virtue, if it is possible for him to do a deed of heroism or of right, he is free, or, conversely, if he is free he is capable of virtue.

Moral Science is the science of moral action. Precisely defined, it is *the systematic application of the moral rule to all conceptions of moral conduct.*

The moral rule, or ultimate rule of right, we have already seen to be that a reasonable being ought to act reasonably, or, as it might otherwise be stated, that *all voluntary action should be held subordinate to the dignity of the rational spirit.* The state of the will as permanent disposition, and the specific acts of the will as it goes out into executive operation, are all to be determined by this ultimate rule of life. Thus all *body* agency which is voluntary, the organs of sense and of speech and the members of the body, together with all the *mental* faculties which the will may control, lie within the province of ethics, and may be brought under the determinations of the Rule of right. Inasmuch as this ultimate rule is necessary and universal, and no result of any generalization of experience, so the system which it binds up within itself will be of no partial application, but will determine how all moral experience *should*

*be*, whether it any where be *actually* so found or not. We thus do not found our morals upon experience, but bring our system to determine experience.

The application of this ultimate rule must be our work, throughout, in the building up of our moral system; but this admits of *two* aspects, which give two very distinct Parts to moral science.

Where the ultimate rule is itself directly applied to the subject, and is expected to control for its own sake, and in its own light solely, so that the man obeys, and holds all things in subserviency to the end of the spirit, from a direct insight into what reason requires, we have then the important Part of **PURE MORALITY**. Nothing in this part acts as motive, but the sole consideration of the claims of spiritual excellency; and the obedience of the man is purely from a regard to what is due to rational dignity. This is the first to be studied; and will be found to be a comprehensive and clear province, where from the intuitions of the reason alone, a wide portion of human duty and responsibility may be imperatively determined.

When the ultimate rule is applied to determine why and how far another may control me, and thus brings a foreign constraint upon my action through the expressed will of a sovereign, we shall have the no less important Part of **POSITIVE AUTHORITY**. This will next demand a full investigation, and present some of the most interesting and important methods of applying the ultimate rule to moral action. The two will exhaust the whole field of Moral Science.

Pure Morality, controlling the entire man for virtue's sake, and in its own light, admits of no varied form in the application of the ultimate rule, and hence this First Part of our work will not present any occasion for a division of its leading motive. The doing of the right, for the right's sake, is everywhere the only causality to action which is recognized in it. But Positive Authority applies its constraints in varied forms, and must be

considered under corresponding divisions. The obedience may be sought through the influence of pains and penalties, and thus the subject be viewed as wholly servile ; and such will give the division of *mere Legality*. While again, the motive to obedience may be solely affection and reverence for the sovereign, and thus wholly cordial ; and this will give the further division of *complete Loyalty*.

Mere Legality will introduce us to the consideration of *Political Government*, and the moral principles that must determine its action ; and complete Loyalty will introduce to the consideration of the *Divine Government*, and the ethical considerations which must be found in its administration. These two, Legality and Loyalty, with their motives of hope and fear for the one, and of simple faith and love for the other, admit of a most peculiar and interesting combination in their action, upon certain subjects, to induce obedience ; and which will introduce a third division to our study, under the form of *Family Government*. In these Divisions will be exhausted the whole part of POSITIVE AUTHORITY, and thus the entire field of Moral Science.

We have, then, our *General Method* fully before us, viz :

I. PURE MORALITY.

II. POSITIVE AUTHORITY.

1. *Legality, in Civil Government.*
2. *Loyalty, in the Divine Government.*
3. *Both Legality and Loyalty, in the Parental Government.*

# FIRST PART.

---

## PURE MORALITY.

---

### I.

#### THE ESSENCE OF ALL VIRTUE.

VIRTUE is heroism or personal worthiness, as the etymology of the word discloses. In its attainment and preservation all imperatives are satisfied. The ultimate right, inclusive of all rights, is the right of a rational being to act worthy of its rationality, and submission to the constraint of this right is the great duty which involves all other duties. When the good will fixing itself upon this, and, in a permanent disposition, holds all other volitions in subserviency to this, there is the comprehensive character of the purely virtuous man.

But this essential virtue may be said to have its conditions in several particulars.

1. *There must be pure-mindedness.* There can be no double-end, and no double-dealing to gain the end of virtue. That I may be worthy, I must know what worthiness requires and must be moved to the end of worthiness alone. If any thing else mingle and blend in the motive, it must so far debase and degrade and make me to be unworthy. This pure simplicity of heart and guilelessness of spirit is the most lovely trait in every virtuous character. The clear, calm, full eye, and the whole countenance serene and sweet in frank sincerity, is but the diffused light of a pure mind through the windows of its temporary tabernacle; and this is still but a faint reflection of the

glowing splendor of the spirit itself, shining out that it may know and approve its own glory. As no countenance can be fair except as brightened by candor, so no soul can be lovely and worthy, no character can be virtuous, which has not a pure-hearted simplicity and sincerity.

2. *There must be decision.* The most pure-hearted sincerity will want the dignity and manliness of virtue, without the firm resolve and the strong will to carry the honest intention into execution. The loveliness of virtue is in its purity; but the strength and dignity of virtue is in its manly valor. The countenance of virtue is not only light with its calm eye and open brow, but its lip is firm and its look steady. Every rising appetite that would debase the spirit, in its passionate gratification, is held back with a determined grasp; and a tight and steady curb is put upon the entire animal nature. The triumphs of human virtue never terminate here in a complete conquest. The conflicting appetites of the animal, though restrained, still exist; and the loose rein, thrown upon the neck for a single hour, may be the signal for their waking in untamed wildness, and plunging into the most ruinous excesses. There must be the element of a strong will, or all virtue is essentially defective.

3. *There must be independence.* That is not virtue which waits on another's help, or follows only another's example. Alone and single-handed, deserted and derided by the multitude, the virtuous man has still an eye just as clear, a brow just as calm, a look just as steady, and a step just as firm in the way of duty, as when the path is trodden by thousands at his side. What others may think, or say, or do, is nothing to him. The worthiness of his own spirit is to be sustained; and the clear conviction of what that demands, and the complacency which that imparts, hold him steadfast no matter where the multitude are going. He speaks his own word, holds up his own hand, stands on his own feet, and despairs that another should lead or drive him, without his own firm conviction of the rightness of the course.

## II.

## THERE ARE MANY PARTICULAR VIRTUES.

ALL virtue is, in general, one ; and is pure-minded, decided, and independent. But this is also consistent with there being many particular virtues, in the pursuit of many subordinate ends. The one great end, and in this the one comprehensive virtue, is the attainment by every man of the highest spiritual worthiness. This is the complete virtue, and gives perfection to the moral character. But this is not secured in any one single act, and only through a perpetual course of action ; and this course of action not directed in the pursuit of any particular object, but, as occasion may call, in the attainment of many objects. The one great end will demand the attainment of the proper object at the proper time.

So neither is man the subject of one particular right or imperative ; but he has many rights and many duties, and therein he has occasion to exercise himself in many virtuous deeds. Thus, to attain the highest virtue, man will be required to exhibit, each in its proper time, the virtues of veracity, honesty, charity, temperance, frugality, etc. ; nor could the comprehensive virtue be attained, except in the attainment at the proper times of the particular virtues. Pure morality will in this way include as many particular virtues, as the one grand end of morality may at various times call forth.

In looking to the varied objects to which the action of man may have reference, we may classify according to some natural peculiarities, and thus arrange our order for considering the particular virtues.

A comprehensive Method may here be given, which will at

one view disclose the order of investigation that will be pursued in the Part of Pure Morality :

**I. DUTIES TO MANKIND.**

**1. PERSONAL DUTIES.**

- a. Self-control.*
- b. Self-culture.*

**2. RELATIVE DUTIES.**

- a. Kindness.*
- b. Respect.*

**II. DUTIES TO OTHER THAN MANKIND.**

**1. DUTIES TO NATURE.**

**2. DUTIES TO GOD.**

## I. DUTIES TO MANKIND.

---

### CHAPTER I.

#### 1. PERSONAL DUTIES. *Self-control.*

BY *personal* Duties are meant such as belong to one's self, and are revealed in each man as due to his own being. Inasmuch as I am a rational person, and my ultimate law of action is that which requires me to act worthy of this high endowment, there are many duties to myself beside the duties to others which the same law of reason will disclose. The ultimate Rule of the highest worthiness of reason will demand from myself the highest attainable perfection in all things ; and will apply negatively, — that I avoid all injury by *self-control* ; and also positively, — that I secure all practicable improvement by *self-culture*. The first, under the virtue of *self-control*, will occupy the present chapter.

A moral *Law* is a rule imposed upon a man ; a moral *Maxim* is a rule adopted by a man. Pure morality may make a certain maxim to be law, in the sense that it imposes upon the man the duty to adopt the maxim ; but it is known as maxim, not from its being imposed by morality, but only from its being voluntarily adopted by the person. Inasmuch as we are now to consider the duties which man owes to himself, we are virtually determining the maxims which every man should propose to himself in the regulation of his own conduct, and the most conclusive and consistent way of grouping the particular duties together, will be found by this application of the several distinct

maxims which morality would make it incumbent on every man to adopt. Under the maxim will be appropriately classified the duties, and we shall use the maxim indiscriminately for both commanded duties and forbidden offences, and thus take occasion to introduce the virtues or the opposite vices, as convenience may dictate.

The grand maxim for this virtue of self-control, is, “BEAR AND FORBEAR.” It will comprehensively embrace all the virtues included in self-control, although there will be an advantage in breaking up the general maxim into several less general, but which will each still include many duties.

1. “*Do thyself no harm.*” By this maxim, morality would guard all bodily members and all mental faculties. The physical constitution is, throughout, adapted to the grand end of the spirit, and it is, therefore, a reasonable requirement upon each man to preserve, as far as lies within his power, his entire constitutional nature inviolate. All over-taxing and straining any member or faculty; all enervating habits and careless neglect, which leaves the body or mind to suffer; all injurious methods of dress or diet, or general regimen, which bring any violence to nature; or, in fine, any acting or withholding to act, which weakens, deranges, or paralyses any portion of the human system, are forbidden in this maxim, and are to be excluded as vices reproachful to man’s spiritual dignity. All excessive indulgence, and all engrossing attention to business or study, whereby the physical powers become debilitated or disordered, are in like manner here prohibited. But besides these general applications of the maxim, we may introduce several specific topics of excluded vices or included virtues which we will now more fully particularize.

1. MAIMING. By this is to be understood any bodily injury or dismemberment which lames or disfigures the person. The polling of the hair, clipping of the beard, or paring of the nails, may be demanded by comeliness or cleanliness, and the

neglect subject to great inconveniences ; and decay may make it salutary to remove a tooth, and disease to amputate a limb ; and in all such cases the maiming may be a virtue, as really dignifying and not debasing the man. But whatever mars the human constitution, or would be a disgrace to the person in the circumstances, is forbidden. A man might lose his hair or a tooth, in the above view, with no disparagement to his moral character ; but one who should shave off the hair or pull the teeth for a reward, would necessarily incur an indignity which morality would condemn.

Among more barbarous people, the practice of disfiguring and scarring the body, or terribly distorting and maiming it, is by no means uncommon ; and any lingering habits of such violence, for forcing a more fashionable shape, or attaching artificial ornaments, are offences both against a pure civilization and a pure morality. Emasculation, for purposes of improving the voice, adapting one's self to serving in a seraglio, or from a mistaken view of repressing occasions of temptation, is a most vicious degradation of manhood, and abhorrent to all moral sentiment.

**2. SELF-TORTURE.** All penances, mortifications, fastings, and rigid austerities, by which health is undermined and the constitution weakened, are condemned by a pure morality as a vicious indignity to the person and an unwarranted invasion of the constitutional integrity. Superstition often exacts that which morality forbids ; but a true piety never demands immoralities. It always exalts, and in nothing debases humanity. Constitutional nature may never righteously be violated for purposes of spiritual discipline. The Saviour's announcement of the law of the Sabbath, is the divine example for all Christian ordinances, that it is made for man, not man for it. It is never to be pushed in its strictness to man's physical injury. Mercy, as a regard to constitutional welfare, is higher than sacrifice. The fasts and self-denials, that true Christianity enjoins, will rather invigorate than enfeeble the human system.

3. **SUICIDE.** The highest immorality against this maxim is suicide. In this the violence to constitutional being reaches to its utter destruction. Man's duty is to cherish and preserve life, not to destroy it. The instinct of nature is strong towards the preservation of life, and to guard against and ward off whatever may threaten it, so that the act of the suicide is most shockingly unnatural. It is sometimes asked, has not the man the right to withdraw himself from the contests or the tedium of life, when life itself becomes a burden? The answer is a most decided negative, when the ultimate end of life is truly apprehended. This end is not happiness, and thus permission for voluntary release when misery becomes unavoidable, but spiritual worthiness, and which may be gained and preserved in any position, and in none more fully than amid disappointments, afflictions, and bereavements. The claim is, to stand up in manly dignity and preserve the entire person, body and soul, in full integrity, keeping the spirit brave and pure while the flesh suffers, and not cowardly to fly the post providentially assigned because disasters multiply.

4. **SELF-DEFENCE.** If I am to restrain my own hand from self-injury, it is my duty to ward off injuries to myself from other sources. The man would be immoral, who should unresistingly allow foreseen dangers to come upon him. This is quite clear, when the danger threatened is from nature, or from a wild beast. No violence done to nature, or to an animal, invades any rights which can lie in nature or an animal; and when this violence is in self-defence, my duty to myself demands it. There is no difficulty in self-defence where no rights are invaded.

But when attacked by a person, may I defend myself by assaulting and disabling him? The dictate of pure morality seems plain in the affirmative. If I only disable in self-defence, I may ever afterward regret that necessity as a misfortune; but if it has gone to the extent of taking life where this was neces-

sary to shield my own, I shall not feel debased by it ; nor does the common judgment of men condemn me. The courts excuse a homicide required by self-defence. This is not because I, if assailed, have any right to punish the assailant. To repel a wrong and to requite a wrong are two very different matters, and my only right when attacked is the right to repel the attack only so far as this may be requisite for my own defence. When this is done, the assailant has no right to complain, nor I any reason to feel self-degradation. It would have been unworthy of me to have passively assented to the injury, and allowed my own rights to have been wantonly and wickedly destroyed. The general maxim, "Bear and forbear," does not exclude the right of self-defence.

But is not Christianity against it? "Forgive your enemies." "Resist not evil." "If one take your cloak, give him also your coat ;" "if he smite on one cheek, turn to him the other also." The full prohibition here is of revenge. Vengeance is the Lord's, not for any man. Where the injury is inflicted, let God avenge, not yourself. Rather let the injury be repeated, than to retaliate. Forgive him ; do him good ; "heap coals of fire on his head." This will melt and subdue, rather than vengeance. The whole spirit of Christianity looks at injuries in this aspect, and pure morality would do the same. Even in strict self-defence, the least blending of retaliatory vengeance would be unworthy of me, and thus an immorality. But self-defence may be, and should be, without revenge. The disabling of the assailant must be done solely to save myself, not to take vengeance on him ; and with that spirit, even to the extent of taking life to save my own, Christianity as well as morality will justify it.

2. "*Keep your body under.*" To permit the gratification of any appetite to become an end of life, is to allow the flesh to tyrannize over the spirit and bring it into a most unworthy bondage. No want, however craving, may rule over an impera-

tive in man's spiritual being. The indulgence of such want would be a vice, not merely as inducing injury to the constitution and thus violating the former maxim, "do thyself no harm," but here, as a direct affront to the spirit, and immoral because unmanly. It would be the man prostituting the prerogatives of his humanity, and living like the animal. No tyranny is more degrading than when carnal appetite gets its domination over the reason, and the man sells himself in bondage to the flesh. There is no act so base that such a man may not do, and no vice so vile that such a man may not practice. This maxim excludes :

i. INTEMPERANCE. This more directly applies to an excessive indulgence in eating and drinking, though the term properly includes all immoderate gratification. Stimulating and pampering the appetite for food and drink, and then permitting this to control as an end in life, to the exclusion of spiritual and moral claims, is a most shameful degradation. We do not need to look at it in the light of the evils it entails upon the man, and his family, and the community ; sufficient for its deep condemnation as an immorality, when we see the baseness and the vileness of a spirit which consents to forego and sacrifice its own high prerogatives, and discard its claims to rightful sovereignty, that the body may be surfeited with riotous living.

In the case of strong drink another appetite is awakened, more raging and insatiate than the strongest thirst. The diffusion of the alcohol through the system awakens a wild but pleasurable excitement, and ultimately an uncontrollable desire to perpetually repeat the intoxication. The languor and collapse of the system after the debauch is an insufferable pain to the drunkard, and nothing allays it but increased measures of the same stimulant, so that he is driven to the cup by an intolerable torment, as well as allured by anticipated gratification, and before these raging passions the spirit has sunk, hopeless of all recovery of its rightful dominion. A more pitiable, and

at the same time a more contemptible condition among men, cannot be found, than that of the confirmed drunkard. The use of the stimulant, in the most moderate degree, is a door opened upon this frightful abyss, and thus all use is dangerous ; and the most stringent reasons must be found for its being tasted, or it becomes an immorality. To tempt the dangerous way, by occasional convivial indulgence, is already a spiritual indignity that no pure-minded man would bear.

**2. LICENTIOUSNESS.** This includes all illicit indulgence of the sexual passion, though every unlawful gratification is properly licentious. The perpetuation of the race depends upon this constitutional inclination, and hence the necessity and the benevolence of its deep and universal implantation in human nature. The consequences depending could not be safely left to weak impulses ; but this very necessity, in the nature of the case, induces the greater danger of spiritual degradation and debasement from it. Hence God, in nature, has surrounded it by the many checks and safeguards of the native modesty and precious estimate of virtue in the pure, the public disgrace and self-reproach which attaches to the impure, the most inveterate and loathsome diseases which follow in its train, and the debasing of every refined sensibility which follows on the loss of sexual virtue. By the positive institution of marriage, God has also tempered and regulated the sexual propensity, and tranquilized its impulses, so that, even in the necessity for its strength, it may be held by every one in legitimate subjection to the dignity of the spirit. Only in regulated marriage is sexual intercourse consistent with virtue, while all forms of fornication, seduction, prostitution, and adultery, are vices that terribly degrade and debase the immortal spirit. We look not now to the physical evils attendant upon licentiousness, and which greatly aggravate its immorality ; but the conscious vileness of the spirit of the debauchee is his own perpetual monitor of the viciousness of his practice. The presence of virtue and purity is a perpetual reproach to him.

3. AMBITION. This, when understood in a bad sense as a vice, includes an inordinate desire for power and control over the actions of other men. To seek power and attain it for the ends of spiritual worthiness, if it be called ambition, is a virtue. It becomes a vice when the power is desired as a lust of aggrandizement, or as a means of ministering to any other constitutional appetite. It is the putting of the false dignity and honor of popular distinction in the place of that which truly dignifies and ennobles the spirit. It is thus the same vice as before ; putting under the spirit and not the body.

The consequences of inordinate ambition have been always dreadful in the world : oppression, cruelty, war, and bloodshed. But the great vice in the eye of pure morality, is the exceeding degradation of the ambitious man. In the midst of all his proud triumphs, and the servile homage and flattery he is receiving, his own spirit is conscious that it could not come into the presence of a truly glorious and dignified soul, without a sense of self-contempt and conscious unworthiness. None of his honors will bear uncovering in the presence of his own spirit. When he must retire alone and commune with his own conscience, he knows that he is not only naked and empty, but debased and unworthy. He has not pursued such ends as give spiritual dignity, but he has discarded these ends for sensuous cravings, and gained only vanity and self-abhorrence before his own judging and awarding spirit.

4. COVETOUSNESS. A man may covet any possession, but the term applies to an avaricious disposition, seeking inordinately to amass wealth. It need not be dishonest in attaining, but it is putting wealth, however attained, as the end of the active life and not the worthiness of the spiritual character. Wealth may consist in any possessions of property, but more especially in money as the representative of all property. In the avaricious desire for money, the baseness of covetousness more specially manifests itself. It comes to transfer its idolatry, from

the objects which might minister to sensual appetite to that which is only their representative ; and ultimately to that, not as the representative of any thing it means to take in exchange for it, but for the gold itself, and sordidly hugs the treasure, not in any anticipation of coming enjoyment, but solely in the avaricious lust of possessing money.

How debasing is this vice may always be seen in its effects. It swallows up and absorbs all other emotions. The miser lives and feels only in his gold. Want and misery in any form may present themselves, but his heart is callous to all distress. He denies himself all the comforts of life, and barely subsists in the use of the plainest necessaries that he may daily add a little more to his large accumulations. He not only loses all nobleness of spirit, but more than almost any other vicious man loses the apprehension of what real spiritual dignity is. The voluptuary, whether the drunkard or the debauchee, often feels a keen disgust of his pleasures, and to the ambitious man there come times when the unsatisfying nature of all that he has gained gives him bitter mourning, but the miser never seems to feel his real wretchedness. The inner light has so nearly gone out, that he seems to have lost all consciousness of his degradation in the loss of all apprehension of what is due to his spirit. His reverence is gone ; his sense of self-respect is gone ; his moral shame is gone, and his whole sentient being has become almost as torpid as the gold he worships. This is the ultimate goal of avarice, and discloses how detestable a vice it is.

3. *Rule your own spirit.* The spiritual in humanity is degraded whenever it submits to have ends imposed upon it, and yields itself blindly to the dictates of another. Self-possession and self-direction are essential to virtue ; and the obligation, to take upon himself the control of his own conduct, is inalienable from man. No one can rightfully give up this responsibility to another, and no one can rightfully assume it for another.

The true dignity of man's spiritual being can be sustained in no other manner than by his proposing to himself the ends of reason, and resisting to the last extremity all interference with this inalienable prerogative. There can be no question allowed as to whether he may not live longer, or avoid more care, by allowing his spirit to be ruled by some other agency than himself ; the assent to such dictation is a renunciation of the prerogatives of personality and consenting to become a thing, and thereby an attempt to abdicate the authority of his own rationality, than which nothing can be more debasing. It is man renouncing his manhood, and voluntarily taking the place of the animal, to be used by others.

The submission to the claims of a righteous debt, complying with the conditions of a contract, or yielding to the demands of righteous authority, is no renunciation of the control over my own spirit ; for in each case I see the rule which binds my conscience, and which it would be unworthy of myself to disregard. But to sacrifice the authority and integrity of my spirit, by allowing circumstances, or other persons to impose their own ends upon me, would be feloniously to destroy my moral self, and make it better for me not to have been born. Better not to have had the rights and responsibilities of a person, than in having them basely to surrender and alienate them.

This maxim stands opposed to :

i. SERVILITY. This includes not only the assent to be a slave and obey a master who regards only his own ends, but all mean submission and cringing or fawning sycophancy. To put myself so under the control of a military leader, that I cannot comply with the claims of morality and religion ; or, to surrender my soul to the keeping of any minister of religion, that he may direct my faith and determine all my devotional service, which I only blindly adopt from him ; or, to yield myself to a master, who consults his own pleasure and uses me only for his

purposes ; all these would be openly renouncing my manhood and giving away my personality, and would be most severely condemned by morality.

But much more comprehensively, this maxim excludes very many unworthy exhibitions of a slavish spirit among multitudes who would claim the dignity of freemen. Many shrink from known duty before the opposition of power, or a perverse public sentiment ; others yield to custom, and follow the fashion in matters of a moral bearing, and thus renounce their own judgment for the caprices of the multitude ; and others identify themselves with some party, and give up opinion and practice, measures and influence, as the party may direct. Private judgment is renounced, and personal responsibility discarded, and men thus become the mere drift-wood on the current which others are controlling.

Servility, also, often takes the form of hypocrisy, which conceals real convictions, or makes pretence of such as it has not, and dare not stand out in open acknowledgment of its honest sentiment ; it shows itself in cowering before arrogance, in flattery to get favor, in ostentatious humility to procure praise, and gratuitous self-disparagement to induce undeserved commendation ; and in all cases manifests a want of manliness and dignity highly derogatory to a rational spirit. The man does not rule himself, but he allows other things to rule him. He is a mere trimmer and time-server, or a mere tool in the hands of others, with no self-decision and manly independence.

2. VANITY. This, as the name imports, is mere self-inflation ; making large assumptions and speaking "great swelling words," when the real character is empty of all solid attainments. It abundantly manifests a want of self-possession, and consents to exchange that self-complacency which a spirit that rules itself worthily acquires, for that self-conceit which self-ignorance induces.

This also appears in divers forms. Persons may over-

value particular qualifications or possessions, and show a false pride in their beauty or strength, their talents or station, their dress or equipage, while disregarding all obligation to attain such real excellences as would adorn and ennable. There is often exhibited with such a thirst for popular applause; which is most reproachful to all true worth, by thrusting themselves forward on all occasions; obtruding upon public notice in most conspicuous positions, and making lofty pretensions; turning conversation upon themes which will give prominence to their deeds, or occasion to gratify a perpetual egotism; and a boasting demeanor, which vaunts of their success and parades their possessions, despising the unfortunate and throwing contempt upon all their competitors. It is in one respect more unfortunate than most vices. The vain man cannot refrain from his perpetual ostentation, and yet he can nowhere show himself without exposing his emptiness. It necessitates the contempt due to all destitution of worth and dignity.

3. JEALOUSY. This term is used here to cover a wide region of vicious manifestations among mankind of a spirit selfishly greedy for its own indulgence, and malevolently averse to all enjoyment by others. It may have other names of envy, hatred, malice, revenge, etc., according to the different circumstances of its exhibition and degrees of intensity.

We not seldom find those who habitually dwell upon their own wants and woes, and magnify their own misfortunes and afflictions, and set over against their poverty and hardships the abundance and enjoyment of others, and thus keep themselves in a perpetually peevish discontent and petulant complaining. Their fretfulness drives away all comfort, their murmuring excludes all gratitude; and they cannot enjoy what they have, because some one has received so much more; nor sympathize with any other's distress, because their sorrows have been so much greater. Such a temper ripens on to a more gloomy and sullen discontent. It broods over real ills or imagined injuries,

and thus nurses a spirit of misanthropy and malevolence, which either rankles in secret hatred, or comes out in fits of anger and revenge. The evils to himself and others abundantly show the vice of a jealous temper, and the inveteracy of such a habit, once formed, testifies that "greater is he that ruleth his own spirit than he who taketh a city."

4. FALSE-HONOR. When a man looks steadily at his own spiritual being, and completely knows himself, he will have a true estimation of what is real dignity and worth. In the apprehension of what is the intrinsic excellency of humanity, he will see at once what is due to himself, and what is due from himself to others. True honor will be found in that course which secures the highest spiritual worthiness. But when a man turns off the eye from his rational spirit, and looks out upon popular opinion and public estimation, and deems that to be honor which gives him reputation among the multitude, he has come to an estimate of personal dignity most false and really degrading. His honor is not worthiness, but popular repute; his standard is not that which requires inward excellency, but that which follows human opinion; and instead of ruling his own spirit, the conventional maxims and factitious customs of the society where he may happen to dwell will rule him.

This is a great immorality, and leads to many enormities. The man soon becomes most morbidly sensitive to the application of the outer standard, since he has no clear apprehension of the standard within; and he is jealous and resentful, arms himself to protect his false dignity, and challenges his friend and meets him in deadly combat, to keep himself in countenance with the society about him. He kills his friend, or lets his friend kill him, for public reputation; but he has no courage to face public opinion for inward worthiness' sake. The whole immorality of the quick, fiery, resentful, duelling spirit, so rife in some portions of society, is best seen in this very point. The honor which defers to a popular and perhaps perverse estima-

tion, instead of standing by the standard of what the worthiness of the spirit requires, is the spirit's greatest indignity.

5. GAMBLING. This is the risking of one's possessions upon chance. It is the abandonment of wisdom, and the acceptance of an issue, which the gambler not only cannot foresee, but respecting which he has no conviction that it will be rationally determined. He sets aside his reason, he goes upon a guess which has no foundation, or even proceeds without a guess, and thus besides blindly risking a possession, which he has no right to own except with the obligation to use it wisely, he blindsfolds himself where his first and clearest duty is to see. It is unworthy of reason thus to do, for it is the surrender of the self-possession and the self-control of which reason can only be unreasonably deprived.

---

## CHAPTER II.

### 1. PERSONAL DUTIES. *Self-culture.*

It is not a sufficient fulfillment of our personal duties that we control ourselves from all that will induce harm; we are morally bound to advance to as high a degree of perfection as is attainable, and improve ourselves in all things as we have opportunity. This perpetual and complete self-culture of every bodily and mental faculty is due in the right of our own spiritual being, and it is unworthy of any man to neglect any portion of his person which admits of improvement. The general maxim is, — SECURE A COMPLETE SELF-DEVELOPMENT. The moral force of the maxim appears in the following considerations.

Every germ expands to maturity through the energizing of an inner vital force, and no unfolding from the outside should be called a development. Each living germ has its own rudimental

forms within it, and the living energy works, as occasion is given, through these forms, and thereby induces a growth according to the law within the subject itself. The conditions being given, the whole growth takes an orderly and symmetrical progress to its consummation. Nothing new can be inserted in the germ ; the vital force, the determining form, and the rudimental elements are already given, and the culture can be only outside appliances to occasion the development of what is now within.

Plants and animals are subjected to such conditions as nature throws around them, and must thus grow to maturity under a necessity of both external and internal determinations. But to man is given a capacity to superintend himself the entire development of body and mind. He can add nothing to the rudiments already there, and can change none of the inner forms through which the working of the vital force shapes the growing product ; yet can he supply fitting conditions, and exclude such as are unfit, and perpetuate these through all the process, and thereby bring out completely and in due proportion all that has been given. And here applies the whole stress of the imperative in the above maxim. So select and apply the outward conditions, that all which is given in the man may be perfectly developed. A wilful or a careless neglect secures a deficiency or a deformity, and this perpetuates itself in all subsequent being, and beside the reproach of the perpetuated physical deformity, there is an eternal debasement from the moral delinquency.

This general maxim, which binds every man to the duty of self-culture, may best be apprehended in its ethical claims, by considering it as it divides itself into several other maxims less general and yet including each many specific duties under them. We shall here, as before, include promiscuously virtues to be practiced and vices to be avoided.

i. "*Grow in stature.*" This maxim includes the entire

physical development of the man, and demands that he be not allowed to grow up like the wild ass' colt, but under well-regulated training and discipline that shall secure, as far as practicable, a sound mind in a sound body. All the appliances which experience and sound judgment have found to be salutary should be induced, and all that is deleterious averted. This is especially important in childhood and youth, where the whole constitution is the most susceptible, and the impressions made in it the most enduring. From a vicious neglect in this respect, many children die in infancy, and many others drag on a sickly, deranged, and deformed body through life, the whole misery of which is chargeable to the culpable neglect of their physical education. Much mental imbecility, indecision, and irresolution, and even cases of mental derangement and idiocy, find their cause in the treatment received in the cradle. The whole type of the physical character shows ever after the effect of the earliest applications to it.

The parent, it is true, must first and earliest stand responsible; but with the first dawning of discretion and accountability, the child should be made to feel the importance, and to act under it, of a careful regard to a healthy and orderly physical development. Very early, responsibilities begin to rest upon the person himself, and any injury done to the health or the constitution, by the child's presumption or carelessness, is a vice as truly lying at his door as the consequences are certain to enter into his experience. There is here embraced a careful regard to :

i. DIET. The earliest nourishment which nature provides from the mother, may be so vitiated as to give a perverted appetite, a diseased constitution, or an early death. The whole future experience of an immortal being very much depends upon its salutary sustenance and nourishment for the first months of its existence. The carelessness or viciousness of the parents may thus go down to the third and fourth generation of their

children. The mother may poison her own blood by her practices, or the child be fed on the milk of animals which has been poisoned by their food, and no excuses of convenience or interest can any more expiate the guilt than they can remedy the mischief of the conduct. A misplaced tenderness and fondness is also ruining many constitutions in their infancy and childhood, by an indulgence in crude fruits, confectionery, pastries, and other so-called delicacies, and though pleasing to the child in the indulgence, is to be terribly bitter in the subsequent experience. And through adult life, beside the indignity of pampering appetite, and living only to eat and drink, there are the certain consequences upon the constitution of what we eat and drink ; and all unwholesome diet, all surfeiting and drunkenness, reaches and dishonors the spirit by deranging the tabernacle in which it dwells and the only organism through which it can act. The imprudences and excesses in diet and drink probably disfigure and derange more bodies and destroy more lives, among the successive generations of mankind, than the combined ravages of war and pestilence.

2. DRESS. : Nature clothes the animal for the climate where it dwells ; but the unprotected body of man must be clothed by his own care. His dress therefore belongs to his culture. He needs dress both for the protection of his body, and also for the ends of comeliness and adornment. Reason expresses itself in beauty, and the rational spirit in its self-development appropriately clothes the body with a dress expressive of the moral personality which dwells within it. Dress thus becomes beautiful, and the body is made more beautiful thereby. An unclothed body would be as abhorrent to the taste of a well-developed person as to his sense of modesty or comfort. But modesty and comfort can never be sacrificed to fondness for fashion or love of display without an immorality. While modesty will always be compatible with the dress which is also comfortable, fashion may often violate both ; and when it does either, no

purely moral person will follow it. Dress is often so worn as to cramp and deform the person, or made of so slight and frail a texture as to fail of proper protection, and in each case the duty of the maxim is violated. Elegance and taste are shocked where modesty and comfort are sacrificed, and no fashion can really make that dress becoming which belies the very ends for which dress is worn at all. Protection to the person, good taste, and pure morality will always readily combine in the same garment.

3. EXERCISE. To the young, life is a perpetual motion. The necessary sleep is no sooner over than the increasing activity again begins. Every constitutional faculty is augmented and perfected in its own exercise. There is no healthy and vigorous growth, in the animal constitution, without activity and exertion. This becomes less impulsive and sportive as age advances ; but so long as the spirit dwells in the body, it will demand for its own sake that the body be used, and so long as there is life in the body, will the well-being of the body demand action. An idle man or a slothful man will not long remain a vigorous man. The child needs the air and the sunshine, as well as the plant ; and the strongest constitutions, the most hardy men, are those who have grown up in active employment in the open winds of heaven.

A sedentary employment, a student's occupation, should be regularly interrupted by periods of vigorous out-door exercise. The culture of the mind is falsely sought by perpetual application, and leaving the body through which it must act to enfeeble itself in inaction. It will be no honor to the spirit, to plead a perpetual devotion to its culture, if there is a neglect of the bodily organs, through whose healthy functions alone the cultivated spirit can come out in communion with man and nature. A credulous or conceited application of some peculiar gymnastic exercises, as well as dietetic observances, may be cherished and practiced, and harm be done to the body by its unadaptedness,

as well as dishonor to the spirit by its foolishness ; but past a doubt, many diseases and deaths had been precluded, and many otherwise mortal disorders may now be removed by judicious and regulated bodily exercise. It is better than medicine ; it is really very much the efficient in many far-famed methods of dealing with chronic diseases, combined with a regard to regular sleep and diet.

4. CLEANLINESS. Filthiness of person, dress, and dwelling, is a vice in itself, and a reproach and indignity to the spiritual being of man ; but it also interferes with the health and perfection of the body. A refined sense might be repelled from a dirty dress or dwelling, before its foulness had attained to such a degree as to injure health or endanger life ; but many a lingering disease is induced or aggravated, and many a death hastened, by the foulness of the apartment in which the person takes his food and sleep. The body, as well as the mind of the child, will mature more perfectly, the more cleanly are its habits ; and the life of no adult person can be passed in slovenliness and filthiness without debasement to the spirit and detriment to the bodily health and soundness. Cleanliness of person and dress, and neatness in and about the dwelling which is the home of a family, reward themselves in the refinement and elevation they induce, and the buoyancy and vigor of health they impart ; and no parent is fulfilling his moral duties to himself or to his family who permits himself or them to be habitually uncleanly.

2. *Grow in practical knowledge.* We restrict this maxim to the cultivation of the faculty of judging according to the sense. What this limited province is, may be apprehended from the following considerations :

Animals learn from experience. They have found consequences in certain connections, and have thus come to expect their recurrence. They may thus become prudent in conduct towards themselves, and kind in their actions towards others.

But the animal cannot carry up its data to any higher point than sensible experience. There is no capacity for apprehending necessary and universal truth ; no power to intuitively see axioms and *a priori* principles ; and thus no capability to carry its processes beyond the data given in sense. Its deductions, if we may call them such, are all sensible and never strike their root in reason, and while we ascribe to the animal *knowledge*, we never assign it *wisdom*. If we apply the word wisdom to any animal sagacity, it is always in the inferior sense of cunning, and not that the animal can ever become the sage. If it ever uses an understanding, it gives no evidence of ever making use of reason.

Man, also, as participant in the animal faculties, has an understanding which judges from the data given in sense ; and as his animal faculties, though the same in kind yet in many respects superior in degree to the brute, can be made the more comprehensive, so he can attain to greater knowledge. He can observe more extensively, and deduce general consequences more accurately, and thus attain to broader and more safe prudential rules of action. And here come in the duties enforced by the maxim, "to grow in knowledge." Man's spiritual worthiness demands that he make the most he may of his understanding. The events transpiring around him are not mere floating appearances, occurring and passing away with no important bearings upon human interests, but that which has been is an index how it may again be ; and thus nature is perpetually teaching every man through his experience. An instructive book is directly before him, and it is worthy of him that he study therein daily, and gain practical knowledge. He is bound to thus learn the way to do good to himself and others, and how also from both himself and them to ward off evils.

It is by thus cultivating the faculty of judgment, that we become prudent and skilful. This perpetual flow of events passes on by us, throwing upon ourselves and others the com-

mingled good and evil which the current bears along, and as we habituate ourselves to judge of what is coming from what has passed, we know how prudently to direct our own conduct, and how to propose that which is useful for others. This power of practical consideration and ready tact to seize upon the proper means in the right time, gives an executive skill which we sometimes term *wisdom*; but to mark our distinction of it from the attainment of the cultivated reason, we call it *worldly wisdom*; a skill in safely and effectively using natural occurrences. No man becomes thus worldly wise who does not habituate himself closely to observe men and things, and keep his eyes constantly open upon what is passing around him. A clear, far-reaching foresight, is the result of careful discipline and patient practice. To one it may come more readily and more perfectly than to another, but a sound and safe judgment is in all cases the product of careful and cultivated industry. An endowment of native wit is essential to any cultivation, but however richly endowed, the talent will lie hidden and unimproved, if not put out to use. The maxim carefully practiced will exclude :

1. STUPIDITY. This as here used is not so much a defect of nature as of moral energy; for what is a natural defect, morality does not recognize. By sensuality, laziness, or a torpid indifference to consequences, occasioned by a phlegmatic temperament, a man may so neglect all exercise of the judgment as to become stupid and doltish. If the mind will not awake to observation, and habituate itself to draw conclusions from facts when observed, the capacity of judging will become weak, and the man properly incur the name of a blockhead. Many a person, with native faculty for much influence and usefulness, allows himself to become a dunce in stupidity from his own sloth and vicious indolence. Experience makes him no more worldly-wise, for in his torpid forgetfulness he never draws any practical conclusions from what has been. He habitually indulges his

wants without knowing any thing how to direct or correct his indulgence. Opportunities of good pass by, which he never sees, and evils come thick upon him, which he had not anticipated. The brute is often less stupid than such a man, and would both avoid evils which come upon him, and gain benefits which he never attains. This is stupidity in an extreme degree, but all approaches to it are so far vicious as self-culture could avoid them.

2. **HEEDLESSNESS.** This is rather occasional forgetfulness than perpetual foolishness. The heedless man allows his attention to be engrossed with the matter in hand, and so fixes his mind upon a limited number of facts, that the wider stream of events bring their consequences to him quite accidentally. While he was looking at some things, and perhaps narrowly enough estimating their connections, there were other things outside his narrow vision which came unexpectedly, and of course to him quite unpreparedly. To all, it may be true, that nature brings consequences quite unforeseen, but when these are obvious to an attentive mind, and only strike us suddenly because we were busied with something more limited, we properly incur the charge of heedlessness, however attentive we may have been to something else.

This short-sightedness may be allowed to grow into a habit of general carelessness, and which will induce all the evils of stupidity; but such absorption in any one thing as to neglect the consequences that must flow from many other things, and especially to put in operation a train of events ourselves, that bring evil upon us on one side because we only observed the connections on the other side, will manifest a want of self-culture that morality must decidedly condemn. Beside the smart of the unexpected evil, there is the conviction of indignity and ill-desert in our heedless subjecting of ourselves to its infliction. A better culture of the judgment would have anticipated and averted the evil, and it was a vice in us to have tolerated the heedlessness.

3. RASHNESS. This differs from heedlessness, in that it is a hardy daring of the consequences, seen or unseen. The man is so intent on a particular end, that though he may have abundant occasion to anticipate evil consequences, he determines to risk them, and recklessly persists in his course till the blow falls. It is usually passion blinding the judgment, and the appetite rushing on to gratification in the discarding of all prudence.

This is a deeper vice than heedlessness or stupidity, for it manifests a more desperate depravity, that will gratify passion at whatever expense. It directly assaults the judgment, and stifles it. It will not be controlled, and hence it will not be warned.

Nature may do its worst in its connected consequences, but its own way the appetite will have. Its impulse is all that controls, and the rule of expediency is contemptuously disregarded. Here is both the neglect of self-control and the want of self-culture, in having allowed the domination of the appetite to become so strong, and the dictates of the judgment to be so inoperative. No one may thus make a mockery of all prudence, and go on in defiance of all consequences without great moral guilt. He refuses to know what he might and ought to apprehend, and what he does know he recklessly disregards, and greatly degrades his humanity. A phlegmatic man, in his carelessness, will probably be stupid, and a sanguine temperament, in his carelessness, will probably be rash.

4. CREDULITY. The man of weak judgment is very liable to be a credulous man. If his temperament is ardent, he will be hopeful; and as he has no safe deductions from facts, he will weakly take his anticipations from his wishes, and be vainly expecting good when evil is near. He is conscious of his incapacity to deduce clear conclusions, and he fondly takes what others say, as more probably true than any opinions he may form. Oftentimes such a man indulges in idle speculations and dreamy fancies, and empty castle-building in the air; and

this credulous conceit finds no check from sober thought and sound judgment, but his weak fancy runs riot without control. The opposite to this is :

5. SCEPTICISM. There is a scepticism which is preliminary to all true science, a cautious state of mind because the man knows how readily human judgment is biased, and how easy it is to come to conclusions from insufficient grounds. He will not take on trust, but induces doubts for the sake of more complete investigation and ultimately more thorough demonstration. But a weak understanding distrusts its own ability to judge, and with a desponding or melancholic temperament, is predisposed to distrust the judgments of others, and is thus sceptical in all things. He doubts for no good reasons, but solely because doubt has been made more habitual to him than belief, and he has not sufficient force of understanding to cure himself of it.

Both of the above, the credulous and the sceptic, have a like want of confidence in their own judgments, and are alike weak-minded, and their difference arises only from varied temperament, or the action of opposite outward influences. They both neglect the cultivation of their understandings, and bring great dishonor upon their spiritual being, and are alike vicious in the judgment of a pure morality.

6. DESTINY. Quite akin to the last two, is that weak judgment, which, having no confidence in its own opinions and conclusions, flies to fixed fate and destiny, as determining all things for the man blindly. It may be sombre, and all things destined to be adverse ; or it may be bright, and all things destined to be prosperous ; but in either case, the issue is expected, not because any clear connection of cause and effect is seen, but in the absence of all apprehended connection, a dependence is placed upon some mysterious destiny to work out all results. There is no mounting to an absolute spirit, who uses all causality as his creature, and in his wisdom appoints the move-

ments of nature's causes as the indices of his own intelligent designs, and which would require clear and vigorous thinking ; but the whole is an escape from all thought, and fondly or fearfully leaving all things in their own ignorance, to some fatuity that determines its issues for them.

This is the vice of neglecting self-culture and leaving the understanding in its weakness, as in the former cases, and equally an indignity to that authority within, which enjoins such a use of the faculty of judgment as to grow in knowledge by it.

3. *Grow in rational wisdom.* By this maxim, it is intended to express the obligation which morality lays upon every man to cultivate the exercise of his reason, and directly to discipline the spirit in all the functions of its activity. The result is a much higher and purer cognition than any cultivation of the judgment can alone attain. It is wisdom, emphatically ; that knowing which is not a rule of prudence to some further good, but a direct knowing which is a good as end in itself. It is the consummation of self-culture.

The animal, whether in brute or man, has attained to its ultimate point of cultivation, and reached the consummation of its nature, when it is brought to apprehend and observe the rules of prudence and kindness as generalizations from experience. The faculty judging according to sense is the highest endowment, and when that is fully developed the animal part of our being is maturely grown.

But man is also rational spirit, and in this is a far higher endowment. This gives capacity to apprehend necessary and universal truth ; not general deductions from data given in experience, but absolute principles which must determine for us our experience itself. It is only in the possession of such a faculty that man is capable of self-knowledge, self-direction, self-instruction, and self-approbation or remorse. The animal can no where attain to it ; the human possesses it in the endowment of a rational spirit. After what has before been shown,

we need only cursorily look at the duty of self-culture in the province of the rational spirit in its three grand functions of operation :

1. TASTE. Man can create his own pure forms which express for him living sentiment, and can thus in his mind's eye apprehend every beauty. These created forms are *to him* perfect ideals, and he can recognize no outer beauty so perfect as the patterns he has within himself. By these he judges of all beauty in nature or art, and as he can intelligently apply his own ideal archetypes, he can intelligently criticise any copy in nature or art. But this capacity to originate pure forms of beauty may be greatly cultivated. By the study of beauty in nature, and as expressed in the products of other artists, his own mental eye becomes clearer, and more perfect ideals project themselves before it as the creations of his own genius. He thus mounts to a higher point of criticism ; and as an artist, rises to a higher style of execution in his copies from his inner more perfect patterns.

Thus is a man competent to cultivate his tastes, and to bring himself and all that he may control more completely under its dictates. He becomes the more refined, and makes all about him to be more beautiful. Society thus adorns itself in the elevation of its own members, the refinement of their pursuits, and the elegance of their products. Such cultivation is a virtue. It perfects what is in man, and makes him intrinsically more excellent. Not because he is happier, but because he is higher in excellence, and more worthy the commendation and acceptance of reason. As an object of simple contemplation in the end of the reason, he is thus a more dignified and excellent being.

2. SCIENCE. Man can attain to universal axioms, and carry out his pure intuitions to necessary conclusions in geometry ; and can rise to universal principles and carry out the necessary connections in a nature of things, and attain to demonstrated

truths in philosophy ; and can thus cultivate a pure science in mathematics and physics. He may thus commune, not with nature only, but with the Creator of nature, in those principles which were in the Divine Mind and which determined the Eternal Wisdom when, ere creation was, He proposed that it should be.

Such attainment of truth, and the subjection of appetite to the study of it, elevates man, and he rises from animal happiness, not alone to the refinement of taste, but here also to the dignity of science. He is so much the more a man as he has cultivated and brought out his manly prerogatives. His pursuit of science for the end of philosophy itself, is a virtue. The cultivation of his scientific reason has rendered him the more excellent, and thus the more worthy of his own spiritual regard.

3. MORALITY. Man may know himself, and thus apprehend what is due to himself, and thereby attain to an ultimate rule of life for his own direction. He may also carry out this ultimate rule in its application to all men, and determine what is due from each to each, and from one to all, and thus attain a universal science of morals. He may bring his own heart and life under this ultimate rule, and strive to persuade all men to follow the purely right and good. To *be* such as the claim of his spiritual excellency demands is his highest moral worth, and therein is he worthy of his own acceptance and that of all other moral beings, and in that position is his highest dignity. Morality is fulfilled, and virtue consummated, and reason satisfied, when man has cultivated his spirit to its highest worthiness. Here is the end of all self-culture.

The process of this growth in rational wisdom is the same in all the three ways in which reason is revealed. Only reason can speak to reason, and only a contemplation of the beautiful, the true, and the good can quicken us to a keener apprehension of the same. The ugly, the false, and the wrong can lend us no light, nor lead us to any wisdom. They have no light, not even

a light which can disclose themselves, and, incapable of self-revelation, they are only revealed by the shining of the beautiful, the true, and the good. It is only by the contemplation of beauty, truth, and goodness that the true culture in Taste, and Science, and Morality can be achieved.

---

### CHAPTER III.

#### 2. RELATIVE DUTIES. *Kindness.*

We here contemplate man as in society, and seek for the duties which one owes to another. He is one of the race with other men, and the rule of life which each should adopt must have reference to his relations with all. That which is reasonable for one man cannot run counter to the universal reason for all men, and thus no one may propose as end to himself that which would not permit all other men to propose the same. All countervailing, in any one, the universal rule of reason would be setting up some other end for himself than the excellency of the universal reason, and thus dishonoring himself in acting unreasonably. So deep in universal reason lies the divine maxim, "whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them."

Under this head of relative duties we have, therefore, to find and embody such maxims as each man should wish all others to adopt towards himself, and under these will be found what every man should adopt towards all. This will give a universal system of social moral duties. It will not be essential to particularize all that might be introduced ; the maxims will include all duties, and several will be specified as examples of any others.

If we contemplate man in his constitutional appetites as the creature of *wants*, and thus finding an end in *happiness*, he will find occasion to render the same kind offices to others, that he might, in like circumstances, wish should be rendered to him ; and in this there will be the universal duty of *Kindness*. If we contemplate him in his intrinsic spiritual excellency as the creature of *rights*, and thus with an end in *worthiness*, he will find the obligation to regard others with the same respect and reverence as his own spiritual excellency claims from them, and in this there will be the universal duty of *Respect*. These two will embrace all social duties.

We take in this chapter the comprehensive law of *kindness*, and give as its general maxim, "DO GOOD TO ALL MEN AS YE HAVE OPPORTUNITY." This will divide itself into other maxims less general, under which may be noticed several specific duties ; including, as before, promiscuously, virtues commanded, or vices prohibited.

1. "*Owe no man any thing.*" No man can stand entirely independent of others. He must live in society, and be perpetually receiving something from the community in which he dwells, either as individuals or collectively. It would be unworthy of any man to discard all good offices from others, and in a false pride of self-sufficiency determine to acknowledge no obligations to his fellow-men which demand from him good offices in return. Society is thus bound together by mutual wants and interests, and no one may say to another, "I have no need of thee" ; and the force of the maxim requires a repayment to individuals and to the community of that which is an equivalent, or at least that which evinces an acknowledgment of indebtedness. It may be wholly impracticable to enforce such returns of good deeds by any outward authority, or coercive measures ; but the claims of morality are imperative that we do that good to others which repays, or requites by an acknowledgment, the good that has been done to us. This is not

here put upon the ground of equity alone, which would constrain from the sense of respect for the rights of others, but rather on the ground of kindness, as one way in which we are bound to do good to our fellow-men. We are to pay them what is due, not only as a matter of justice, but as one of the ways of showing kindness. They need such returns; it does them good to receive, and morality thus requires it as within the scope of human beneficence. The debt is paid with the warm spirit of a sympathizing interest in their need.

1. HONESTY. It is not only unjust, but also unkind not to be honest. Many a child of want has been left in suffering when the honest debt paid would have relieved from distress; and many a wealthy and powerful man has been put to great inconvenience, because the service expected and paid for was not rendered. In the most emphatic sense may it be said, that morality demands the kindness which has already been made obligatory by previous kindness received.

We may thus be in debt for money, for labor, for kind deeds or kind words; a sympathizing look or a cordial smile may have most touchingly obliged us; and the law of kindness demands that we repay the good deed by other good deeds in return. A debt is thus incurred, by the reception of such favor, that cannot be cancelled by any thing else save the same kindness in some manifested form of reply. Justice might be satisfied in imparting some equivalent, but to the benevolent spirit which had conferred the obligation, nothing could be an equivalent that did not come warm with the exhibition of mutual good will. Though a benefactor ask no return and urge no claim, it is not honest in the beneficiary, if the opportunity is not sought to do some good which shall unequivocally express his sense of obligation for the kindness. Wherever there is a debt, there is an obligation from the received good that must be cancelled by goodness, and the maxim will leave no moral man at rest until it is paid.

2. RECIPROCITY. Not only will kindness be honest, and render back the good deed by equal goodness, but it will show itself open to be obliged, that its own benevolence may thereby be the more stimulated and cultivated. We owe it to humanity to stand ready and inviting to good deeds, as if we cherished the opportunity to be under obligations to reciprocate the kindness. It would be a cold world, that calculated its debt and credit solely in the light of exact equivalent and a just balance ; and still a shy and selfish world, that only owned its indebtedness after the good deed had been rendered ; but true kindness stands at once out on the open ground of reciprocity, ready to take and to give, yea rather ready to take in order that it may give its own full-hearted joy expression in the quick reciprocation of beneficence. It already partakes of a vice to be chary and coy of proffered kindness, as if the heart were reluctant to feel obligation, and would rather not have benefits than to be holden to make kind returns. The law of kindness binds us to be open to a reciprocity of good offices, and admit ourselves to be debtors to humanity in encouraging good deeds, both by a frankness in receiving and a readiness in repaying.

3. MONOPOLY. Under this are included all attempts to take advantage of others' necessities for personal interest. It may be an arranged and laboriously-executed plan to bring others under the necessity, or the prompt and greedy seizing upon the opportunity which providentially occurs. In either case there is the same unkindness, though in the first there is the aggravation of overt selfishness to secure the unkind opportunity.

Morality condemns all such monopoly. It is not in the spirit of kindness, and however the man may plead considerations of equity, it is not strict honesty. Man's relation to man in society is such, that there is due to the whole a higher consideration than to the partial, and especially than to the individual ; and he wrongs the community, when he robs them in any way to advance an opposing interest in himself. He may take advan-

tage of his skill and foresight, and honestly obtain a fair remuneration for it, but not at the expense of being unkind to humanity.

2. "*Give to the poor.*" This includes more than honesty, which always acknowledges some previous indebtedness and the obligation from kindness to pay the debt, and demands charity, which feels the imperative to give where there is no indebtedness. It originates indebtedness. It comes up solely from a known want in another, and a consciousness of ability in ourselves to relieve.

The poor are not merely those who have little or nothing of this world's wealth, but all or any who are in want. The rich in money may in many cases be far poorer, have more distressing wants, than those who beg their bread from door to door. If there is any human want we know, and knowing can relieve, there the maxim applies, and every one so able is morally bound to adopt it as his own guide. It is not sufficient that it be a mere sentiment, or an inward preference which leads to no execution. A man may sincerely say to the poor, "be ye warmed, and be ye filled," and truly *wish* it might be so, and yet not himself actually give any thing to accomplish it. If they were relieved at the expense of others' self-denial he would rejoice, but his charity is a sentiment not strong enough to overcome the purpose of selfishness within him. There must be not only the *wish* but the executive *will*, or there will be no giving to the poor.

It will, moreover, regard mankind as such, and not merely some few men for whom we cherish a partial favoritism. With no distinction of rank, fortune, place, or age; the mere fact that there is a man in want, whom we may relieve, must be sufficient to fix the obligation. All may in some way be reached by the good offices of others, and the lower in society have often the opportunity of imparting the most welcome favors to the higher, and in such a case it is a more noble charity. Such

instances are the more affecting as they are less expected ; and the good will which seeks to bless itself in doing good to others, need not in any class of the community be a day without its favored opportunity for full and effective exercise. And not only the suffering which providences thrust before us, but that unobtrusive misery, which cannot or would not express its wants, is to be sought out and alleviated. Nor is this imperative exhausted in making the sacrifice necessary to find and relieve the destitute. Charity may itself be prodigal. No man is allowed to be charitable indiscreetly, and thus not permitted to give indiscriminately. Much almsgiving fosters want and augments the misery it would relieve. Charity may encourage vice, idleness, improvidence, habitual beggary, and horrible cruelty in its prepared cases for moving public sympathy, and however kind such an incautious donor may be, his duty has been unworthily performed. All injudicious charity, which overlooks its effect upon its objects and the public, and gives from an excited sensibility or to relieve itself from further importunity, is a weakness and a vice, and the careless manner may degrade the giver more than the giving elevates him. All are to seek out the needy, to give for their relief, to guard against injudicious and unsuitable benefactions, and thus show a kindness worthy of their spiritual and rational excellency. To supply others at the expense of what is due to himself, will never be a virtue in any man.

1. CHARITY. This involves the love of benevolence, a disposition that is pleased and rejoiced in seeing others made happy by its hand. It thus delights in doing good. It may not approve of the moral character and conduct of those it relieves, and may thus feel a deep moral aversion and repugnance to its beneficiaries ; but it looks at them as sensitive beings, with wants and sympathies kindred to its own, and relieves from suffering and administers to happiness from the promptings of philanthropy. It is not satisfied with the acting out of its constitu-

tional kindness ; it cultivates and cherishes the spirit of benevolence, and would make its heart more compassionate and its hand more open to human wretchedness. It deems nothing foreign to itself that is human, and thus makes every man a brother and every sufferer an object of its sympathy, and relieves so far as it may. It adorns and dignifies the man who appropriately practices it, and by common consent the world puts it among the most exalted virtues. Because God does good, and makes his sun to shine on the evil and unthankful, so the man who does good in works of charity is named the Godlike.

2. OBDURACY. This includes the stifling of natural sympathy, and the hardening of the constitutional feelings against human want and misery. It must always spring from a perverse devotion to some object of gratification which interferes with the working of kindness. Charity *gives away* for others ; but an inordinate passion, that craves its expensive objects of gratification, may demand the gifts for the poor to be expended upon its own indulgence ; and in such an attitude the man will steel himself against distress that courts relief. It may be an avaricious inclination to amass and hoard wealth, and such a miserly and sordid spirit will fast banish all feelings of pity, and choose that the heart may grow hard lest the hand should open to impart that which is so deeply coveted.

So the man who looks upon charity itself as administered to others, with a selfishness and envy that grudges the gift as so much bestowed upon others and diverted from himself, and would chide and hinder the kindness which does not flow towards his possession, will rapidly harden his heart, and care only to deprecate another's sorrows and magnify his own need.

3. SENTIMENTALITY. This is the excess of animal sensibility uncontrolled by judgment, and unenlightened by reason. The natural susceptibility which is pained and weeps at others' woes is left to its own impulses, or perhaps quickened in sensibility by habitual indulgence, and yet has no regulated action from its

direction to any intelligible and worthy ends. The mere luxury of a soft sensibility is all that is sought, and the tragedy of fiction and of real life are alike welcome as they alike kindle the same emotions. An object of distress at once touches the feeling, but the judgment is not at all consulted whether or how to relieve, nor the conscience enlightened to any source of moral obligation and claims of duty. The tears are as instinctive as the noisy manifestations of animal sympathy in the distress of a fellow brute, and the movement for relief, if any is made, is equally destitute of all virtue. The whole feeling is a weakness, and the morbid sensibility viciously excludes all control of the spiritual over the animal nature. If we sometimes say of sentimentality, in contrast with unfeeling obduracy, that it is an *amiable weakness*, we never suppose that the weakness is thereby exalted to a virtue. Morality condemns this soft sentimentality which is shocked at all suffering, and would interfere as readily to save from the salutary retributions of righteous law, as from the misfortunes of providential experience.

3. "*Be thankful.*" When any act of kindness has been done, the reciprocal duty is thankfulness. The same spirit of kindness, which would give in charity, would in changed circumstances be thankful. Kindness is exhibited in thanksgiving. To one who has received, there may often be nothing but thanks left for him to give; and in such a condition his cordial gratitude may evince as real and as much kindness as the other's benefaction. Gratitude, grace, and charity have the same root, and express originally the same idea. No one would doubt the genuine charity of a heart truly thankful. Put such a man where he can show kindness by giving, and his charities will be as cheerful as has been his thankfulness. It is thus the same grace at heart, and only showing itself in a different form from the necessities of the condition. It is, therefore, as truly the duty of the beneficiary to be thankful, as of the man, who is able, to be charitable. It is the same virtue of a cordial kindness in both.

1. **GRATITUDE.** By this is meant the possession of a disposition that will express thankfulness on all occasions, of benefits intended. The maxim binds the spirit, and not merely the word and outward deed. Ingratitude of spirit is as unkind and as debasing to humanity as uncharitableness. The habit of unkindness is more rapidly gained through ingratitude than through uncharitableness. Favors bestowed indicate a position of superior wealth and power, and the receiver is more liable to indulge a false pride, and cultivate a spirit of mortified vanity, and thus check the flow of reciprocal kindness in his gratitude ; and this tendency in human nature should be sedulously watched and guarded. An ungrateful spirit, in whatever way induced, is a base spirit ; it violates the law of kindness, and unfits itself in any change of circumstances to be a charitable spirit. It shows the person to be not only in a condition of want, which might be of no moral moment, but to have fallen into much deeper degradation by not keeping the control of the spirit, and maintaining its worthiness in all circumstances.

2. **INSOLENCE.** This manifests itself, not merely in the rich and powerful by a haughty dictation and overbearing contempt, but not seldom also in the poor by a rude and impudent and reproachful bearing towards those in a superior station. It is really the same vice in both cases, and finds its root in a heart of unkindness. Ingratitude in receiving favors very readily runs to insolence in demanding more, and querulous complaining that the gifts are not better ; and such impertinence soon renders itself intolerable. The public contempt excludes all public compassion for such impudence, however needy.

Habitual begging is sure to generate this spirit. It begins in selfishness, and as it can have no true gratitude when favors are given, it will be quite sure to manifest displeasure when the favor sought is denied. There will be equal insolence in the importunity, and in the insult that follows refusal. Not only can no habitual mendicancy cultivate a pious spirit, it is quite incom-

patible with a virtuous spirit. It directly promotes insolence, and induces many other vices with it.

3. PEEVISHNESS. Here is the same unkind feeling manifesting itself in another way, and perhaps in a somewhat lower degree. Whatever be done, the person is hard to please ; there is always something not as it should be, and a disposition to magnify it, complain of it, and fret about it. The temper is soured ; the spirit, murmuring and repining, teases and chafes itself by imagined slights or the magnified neglect of others ; and the miserable person soon quenches all sympathy for the misery, which he so perversely determines to make and to keep. Such perpetual peevishness is perpetually annoying and increasingly revolting. Every one sees in it the want of a kind and benevolent spirit, charitable in giving and grateful in receiving, and can give no approbation to the moral character thus represented. When kindness meets kindness with favors, the charity awakens gratitude, and the grateful heart is always meek, and always cheerful. To the sorrowing and destitute, the control of a kind and thankful heart keeps the spirit serene and tranquil. Even suffering will have its patience.

The spirit of kindness will induce to the adoption and fulfilment of the above maxims, and these will include the above and other duties, and avoid the vices which might be drawn out in greater detail. Sufficient has been done to illustrate the principle in this part of morality, and there yet remains to present the duties to mankind which are demanded by *respect*.

## CHAPTER IV.

2. RELATIVE DUTIES. *Respect.*

WE here view man not as a creature of appetite and want merely, but more especially as possessed of a rational dignity and spiritual excellency that in his own intrinsic being entitles him to regard above the brutes that perish. The animal craves help ; the spiritual claims respect.

All imperatives originate in the spiritual part of man's being ; and man's animal wants are to be relieved by man, not because the animal nature has rights and can make ethical demands, but because his spirit has an intrinsic excellency which is debased if a man can, but will not help the needy. This claim to respect must modify the manner of helping, as well as determine the duty to help. Those to whom we are to manifest our kindness are human, and thus our charity must not be as when thrown to brutes ; and those from whom we receive kindness are human, and their charities are to be taken not as if snatched from dogs. The charity must be accompanied and the favor reciprocated with respect on both sides. The commerce in giving and receiving is between rational beings, and the kindness of the charity no more ennobles the one, than the kindness of the gratitude must enoble the other. A defect on either side is not merely a want of kindness, but a debasing of the spiritual personality, and to give with contempt or to receive with impudence would be alike disrespectful to humanity and a reproach to both parties. All violation, in any way, of the spiritual claim to respect in man, is necessarily connected with the loss of his own self-respect in the offer of the indignity. Mutual respect amid all the communications of man with man, is a universal imperative.

The general maxim is, "HONOR ALL MEN." Out of this comprehensive maxim there spring others less general, and which have each many duties, as commanded virtues or forbidden vices, included within them.

1. *Be ye courteous.* The import of this maxim is, that each man should deport himself in a manly way in all his intercourse with other men. All men have an intrinsic spiritual excellency which obliges each to demand of all others the tribute of a manly respect. This is not to be estimated by merely conventional rules and customs which change with the place and the age, but by that perpetual respect which the permanent possession of rational dignity in the human race demands from all, and in all ages. It is not punctilious regard to rules of etiquette ; not obsequiousness, nor flattery, nor dissimulation that smiles outwardly when there is inward contempt ; but a cordial recognition of the rights and prerogatives of a man, and a full accordancce of them all in our whole bearing and demeanor towards men. If such be withholden by others from us, and we be treated by them quite discourteously, there is a courteousness of demeanor still due to them inasmuch as they are men ; and our resentment is to be tempered with a dignity and delicacy, which manifests our own self-possession in observing what is due to humanity, both in them and ourselves. It will exclude all rudeness, rashness, and insolence, in any condition or towards any man. A vicious man, a criminally convicted man, a capitally condemned man, in each case is still a man, and must be treated with the consideration due to the possession of a rational spirit ; yea, an abusive and insulting man may in no way make me to forget what is due to him as a man, and that under the smart of the insult, I should allow myself to treat him as a raging animal.

I may show other and different tokens of respect to the morally wise and virtuous, to the respectful and courteous, than to the base and the insolent ; but in no case may I treat any

man at all unmanly. I debase myself in such disrespect, and am also guilty of offering an affront to humanity. To insult another who has insulted me, or to refuse him the courteous recognition due to him as a man, is not only an affront offered to him, but is a contempt placed upon myself, since I thus acknowledge that my manliness is capable of being outraged by one in whom I recognize no manliness. Such a treatment of another does not spring from the self-respect of a truly dignified character, but is an off-shoot of that self-conceit whose real nature is a self-contempt. In so far as I recognize myself as a man, I shall recognize and respect that which is spiritual in all men.

1. ARROGANCE. This is the ostentatious assumption of superior importance. Simply as a man, one has no prerogative above another. If moral qualities make one more excellent than another, this can never permit the virtuous to display their virtue ostentatiously ; and if any adventitious circumstances place one man in a higher position than another, that will never justify arrogance and assumed self-consequence. It is more and better to be a man than to be a king ; and it is immoral, because it is a disrespect to humanity, when one puts forth the arrogant claim that his superior station makes him a superior man. The truly noble and elevated man manifests such kindness and respect for all other men in his dignity, that he inspires esteem and love, and the highest honors are accorded to him by his fellow-men without any painful sense of their inferiority. His greatness inspires reverence, and his courteous bearing so tempers it towards all, that it becomes cordial respect and goodwill ; while an arrogant man, no matter how high his station, will awaken only the feelings of contempt and reproach. This arrogance is a vice, in that it denies the respect due to others, and really brings upon the man who assumes it a self-reproach.

2. SCORN. This adds to the self-inflation of arrogance, a manifested contempt and proud despising of others. In arro-

gance, this contempt is rather implied, while the manifestation is mainly confined to an ostentatious display of the person's own fancied importance ; but in scorn the manifestation of the contempt for another is made prominent, and the undue consequence attached to himself is rather implied in the indignity and reproach with which the man treats another. Scornfulness is thus a more direct and gross breach of courtesy, and the more odious vice. It is an indignity to humanity to arrogate some prerogative over it ; but it is a greater indignity to offer a direct affront to it, and manifest an open contempt for it. Coleridge has remarked that Shakespeare never makes a great character a scorner.

Scorn is sometimes used in a good sense, as when we say, "the man scorns to do a mean action," "he rejected the infamous proposal with scorn," etc. ; in which is represented the indignant rebuke of virtue, and the abhorrence it feels towards vice ; but more generally it is used in a bad sense, and as above, for the contemptuous disparagement of some other man, and which is always condemned by pure morality.

3. RIDICULE. This may include both arrogance and scornfulness, and adds thereto the maliciousness that would make the subject an object of reproach to others. But while it goes beyond in overt acts to make contemptible to others, it is applied to awaken contempt of not so strong a degree as scorning, but rather that the victim may be the object of derision. And this it does, not by fair presentation of plain facts or serious defects that might truly be reproachful, but by ludicrous selections or combinations designed to make the person a laughing-stock to others. This may sometimes be in wantonness and not deliberate maliciousness, but in any such exhibition there is a want of courtesy which the obligations of mutual respect among mankind demand.

It is sometimes inquired if vice is not often ridiculous, and thus a proper subject of derision ; to which it may properly be

replied, that nothing which sets vice in its true light as both foolish and wicked is wrong. The Scriptures represent good men and even God as treating wickedness with irony.—*1 Kings, xviii. 27.*—*Prov. i. 26.* But in this is no courtesy, for the manner and the end are directed as a severe and terrible rebuke of iniquity. For such higher end, when occasion calls, ridicule may be legitimate. But this seldom occurs among men, and the moral effect of serious expostulation and solemn rebuke is ordinarily better than ridicule or satire. Its immorality is easily determined in the attempt to traduce or defame, to subject to reproach or derision, when contemplated solely as man among men. No one has the prerogative to so exalt himself above the common humanity that he may despise others, nor to take any one from amid the ranks of mankind and make him ridiculous to others. It is a courtesy which common respect for man forbids, and morality condemns.

4. VULGARITY. This is used here in reference to grossness of language, or coarseness and rudeness of manner, in our intercourse with men. The plainest man in the lowest walks of life, and who can only use the homeliest phrases and manners, will do this with a respectful deference and delicacy of spirit, which evinces the essence of true courtesy in his regard toward the man he addresses; and when such a man feels respect, the inward sentiment will at once raise his plainness above all vulgarity. The man of vulgar bearing always evinces the absence of proper respect for the persons with whom he is communing, and thus the vulgar man is always voluntarily the discourteous man. Let him raise his conception of the persons he addresses, to the proper dignity and excellency of their spiritual being, and whatever may have been his comparative culture or refinement, the inner respect for humanity will at once remove all vulgarity and put in its place true courtesy. President Lincoln was not bred in courts, but his sense of human worth and his respect for man made him so well bred that at the great Gettys-

burgh celebration where the representatives of foreign governments and of our own were so largely gathered, it was said that he showed himself as a gentleman, the peer of any one there.

All profanity is of course vulgarity, and obscenity is vulgarity of a gross degree, which can be habitual in any one only in the loss of all self-respect and all respect for the men with whom he associates. It indicates a baseness of spirit fit for any degrading companionship in iniquity, and can hardly have been attained except by a familiarity with low vices.

2. *Deal justly with all men.* Man, in the excellency of his spiritual being, has rights, and may demand that all these shall be acknowledged and regarded by others; and as all other men have rights, so they may in the same manner demand that these shall be respected by him. In this is the foundation of natural justice; the mutual rights of a common spirituality of being, giving equality of claims and reciprocity of duties. Every man may thus demand from all others that which is just and equal. To rob one of his right or defraud him of his due is an indignity to his spiritual being, and this want of due respect to his fellow-man debases his own spirit and makes the robber unrighteous. The vice is seen, not directly in the loss of the happiness which has been occasioned by the injustice, for if this had been occasioned by the animal activity alone, its loss of happiness would have involved no unrighteousness, but it shows itself only in the indignity which has been done to humanity. The defrauded man has been treated as if he had no rights; as if he were thing and not person; and in this want of respect morality finds the vice and applies the condemnation, and the whole is brought home to the conscience of the unjust man, in that his knowledge of his own spirituality convicts him of conscious debasement in the indignity he has done to his neighbor. In the invasion of his neighbor's manhood he has debased his own.

Whatever, thus, becomes a right in any person, whether nat-

ural or acquired in the ongoing of society where he dwells, is his to keep and control, and with which another may not interfere. Any invasion of another's right is this injustice, that it is a violent discarding of his prerogatives of personality, and contemptuously holding him as a thing with no rights. Such an act would sting your own soul with remorse, for you know that in that indignity to him, you have wounded your own spirit and made yourself unworthy. No injustice can so enrich in happiness, that it does not more surely impoverish in unworthiness. No amount of gratification can compensate for the perpetual stigma in baseness. Happiness may have been enhanced, but at the terrible price of perpetual self-contempt.

1. ASSAULTING. This includes all invasion of rights by a direct attack upon the person or possessions of another. The same ethical principle is violated in them all, and the guilt lies in the indignity done to the personality, and its degree is to be measured by that, and not the amount in which it may have interfered with animal enjoyment. It embraces all crimes of violence, and which would be too numerous to consider here in detail; whether assaults upon property, as trespass, burglary, theft; or assaults upon chastity, as seduction and rape; or assaults upon person, as battery or murder. The enormity of the vice is measured by the dignity of the right invaded, and is thus as the violation of the grand maxim, "Honor all men." The injustice is a want of respect; an indignity to humanity; and the nearer to the excellency of the spirit stands the right which has been invaded, so is the personality the more dishonored and the vice of greater enormity.

2. DEFRAUDING. I here include all invasion of rights which is made covertly or deceptively. All cheating, double-dealing, false-weights and measures, obtaining goods by false pretences, violation of contracts, pledges, trusts, commissions, insurance, etc., and thus frauds committed in any way for the purpose of obtaining any thing which belongs to another. These all, again,

come under the one principle of disrespect to the rights in humanity, and an attempt to obtain possession in utter disregard of such rights. It is not so heinous as a direct assault, though it may attain fraudulently a greater pecuniary value, for it does not so directly offer its indignity to the personality ; but its immorality is truly in this, that it assumes to take from a man as it would elude or cheat an animal. It discards the humanity ; it ignores rights ; it uses man as a thing in nature, which may be used in a delusive or perverse accommodation to your own purposes without indignity. And in proportion to such disrespect and contempt of the prerogatives in humanity is the vice of the fraudulent transaction.

3. LYING. A lie is a statement of one person to another, which contradicts the conviction of the person making it. It may be made by direct declaration, by equivocation, by delusive gesture and signs, or, even by utter silence, in circumstances where truth demands assertion or denial ; but, however effected, it makes use of the power which a person has of communicating thought in a way subversive of the very end for which that power was given. It is thus a conscious and voluntary de-thronement of that rational personality by which alone one is capable of an interchange of thoughts with another ; it is an abandonment of one's own dignity, and a direct affront to humanity itself. The liar is willing to declare himself to be no man, and that others are not men.

The essential vice of lying, the ultimate turpitude of the iniquity, is in this indignity to the rational spirit, whose imperative it is that there be " truth in the inward part." Respect for the rational being of others, and the integrity of your own spirit in personal worthiness, demand perpetual veracity.

Questions of casuistry, in reference to the vice of lying, originate in wholly wrong conceptions of the ground of obligation to veracity. If the duty of truth is to be seen only in its general consequences, and this is obligatory only as greater happiness

results from it, there may be many conditions supposed in which it would at least be difficult to conclude that the greater good would not result from the falsehood. Looking only at gratified appetite, and not at spiritual worthiness, as the good to be attained, it will not be difficult to multiply many most perplexing cases, in which human judgment would be pretty sure to lie on the side of the falsehood, unless it were to be conceived that direct Divine interpositions would occur to change the anticipated general consequences. Yea, even in some false views of religion, it may be decided that falsehood is more than excused, and is even obligatory to a religious end.

But the grand principle for determining all such questions of casuistry is not by any calculation of general consequences, and judgment of greater happiness and unhappiness. Somewhere it is to be decided which course *ought* to be made the most happy or unhappy. The Being who establishes the order of nature, that gives out its measure of happiness in its general results, must still have his higher principle determining where the highest happiness ought to be. And this cannot be in some necessity of his own nature, which decides that so it must be or he shall be unhappy, for this would make it to rest only on what that Being *wants* it should be, and not at all on what he sees it *ought* to be. To have any basis in morality, the ultimate test must be one of worthiness and indignity. If a lie is ever to be justified, it must be because there and then it is no indignity to the deceived, and no degradation to the deceiver. All spiritual being demands respect for its own intrinsic excellency; and unless you can find the human being to whom, in his condition, it is no mark of contempt and indignity to deceive him, morality will condemn the lie, and oblige the man to blush in secret at the consciousness of his own baseness in telling it.

3. *Sustain thy neighbor's good name.* In reality there can be no personal dishonor to a man except through his own deed. It must be the man's own disposition which forms his character,

and this disposing of himself must be at his own responsibility. But detraction and defamation may effect the estimation in which he is held by others. The good name of a man in society may be determined by our representation of him. His true character may be belied, and his good reputation lost by no fault of his own. He has the right not only to form his own virtuous character, and possess his own conscious self-respect and approbation, but the right also to his good name in the estimation of his fellow-men. It is a great breach of respect to humanity to detract from a good reputation among men.

All reproach for physical infirmities or bodily deformity will be a violation of the maxim of kindness, and thus a vice in the case of him who so reproaches his unfortunate fellow-man ; but this is not the vice which is induced by a violation of the present maxim. Such reproaches do not reach to the moral personality and take away the man's good name. The maxim we here consider requires that we do nothing to detract from a man's personal character, but that we sustain his good reputation by all proper methods. The adoption of it will exclude many vices.

1. SLANDER. This may include all forms of detraction by word of mouth. It ranges from petty scandal, that imputes minor faults and failings, up to malicious slanders that aim directly at the foundation of the entire character. The tattler and slanderer not only induce jealousies, suspicions, and angry contentions in society, but the very act of tale-bearing and detraction is vicious. One man has no right to be injuring the good name of another, even by reporting that which may be true of him, unless some grave interest of the public may demand it. If a man is plotting mischief against society, or any individuals in it, an exposure of his iniquity for the defence of the community may be righteous. But no exposure can be made by any, for the mere end of giving a bad reputation in

public, even though the man may deserve it. Morality gives him the right to the reputation he acquires, unless some higher right come in and make it your duty to defend that, even at the expense of an exposure of his unworthiness. To do this for virtue's sake is not slander.

The vice of slander appears directly in its disrespect to the humanity in the person slandered. Spiritual worthiness is the highest treasure, and without this the humanity had better never have been raised above the animal being. And yet the reputation for this, the slanderer would wholly destroy. He would do to him that indignity which is expressed in saying, that it were better he were wholly the brute than such a man. And the wantonness or the malignity, that can so reproach another, sinks the author to the deepest debasement. It is this conscious degradation in the eye of the community, that makes the name of the slanderer so despicable. His infamy becomes quite as deep as that to which he would consign his victim. The contempt he manifests towards another, returns upon himself; and his defamation of another man, turns to be a true record against his own soul. The slanderer is himself usually conscious of the baseness of his course, and betrays it in the innuendoes and covert insinuations he uses, and attempts to reach his end by hints, suspicions, and dark surmises, when he would be ashamed to avow his direct purpose, and stand fully out before his object and take the consequences of his designed indignity to his fellow-man. His deed is one for which manifestly his own spirit condemns him.

2. LIBEL. This writes or prints the slander, and publishes it. The same principles apply, as before, and the offence is the same, except as it may be aggravated by the greater notoriety given. Whatever is thus published for purposes of detraction, or with a carelessness and recklessness of the rights of all men to reputation, that sacrifices this to gossip or for gain, is libellous, and strongly condemned by pure morality. It cannot

be justified by the conductors of the public press on the ground of dealing in facts, retailing news, nor even of general benefit in exposing depravity. The claim of the public to the facts must have some specific ground in its own rights, in the circumstances, and such as makes the neglect to disclose, to be a greater treachery and indignity to it, than the disclosure is of disrespect to the exposed party ; and in such a case the publication is no libel, but a virtuous and manly fulfilment of duty in the higher interests of humanity. When, precisely, the facts come within such a principle, each man must judge in his own case, and oftentimes with most distressing convictions of responsibility on either hand.

A false statement is libellous, for whatever purposes made ; for no man may malign an innocent person for any supposed good end, and a true statement is still libellous, if not specifically demanded by the higher rights of humanity ; yea, the more truth the more libellous, for it destroys reputation the more, and this when no public rights are to be subserved by it. Still, as in all cases, so here, the claim of the public is higher than the private, and no man has the right to a good reputation  *falsely*, at the expense of public freedom and virtue.

3. CENSORIOUSNESS. By this is meant the spirit of fault-finding and suspicion of bad motives and intent, and which exhibits itself in numberless ways of complaining and detracting, and induces the habit of backbiting and petty defaming, when no serious attack upon character and good name is attempted or intended. It always looks upon the dark side of human character, and suspects every man to be a knave that has not pretty fully proved his virtue.

True respect for the spiritual being of man demands, that we look upon the multitude of human faults and failings with as lenient an eye, and speak for them as apologetic a word as reason will allow. Instead of magnifying and aggravating human offences, it would soften and palliate as far as circum-

stances will admit. Even vices and crimes will not be divulged, and the wicked reproached for them, except as the rights of humanity demand. Such a spirit will not allow itself to become censorious, uncharitable, sarcastic and sour towards others, nor be disposed to assail even the vicious tauntingly or scornfully.

If satire may sometimes be righteously applied in castigation of human vices and follies, the virtuous satirist will not choose that his position and vocation should make his spirit harsh and bitter towards the objects of his censure ; but having chastised them for their good, he would still rather soothe, encourage, and excuse, when that tenderer spirit may work them as much good. A censorious spirit loves censure, and gratifies itself in fault-finding, distrusting, and maligning, and has itself great need of the forbearance and apology it denies to others. A spirit that "hopeth all things," is better than that which habitually fretteth itself against evil. Respect for man will induce apologies rather than censures, and morality demands a charitable rather than a censorious judgment.

4. *Be obedient to Government.* The manner of right authority, as a source of obligation, is to receive an examination in a subsequent Part of our work ; but we here consider it solely as an existing fact with which man comes into connection, and in reference to which he has duties declared directly in the mandate of his own reason. We do not here inquire in what respects patriotism may bind in subjection to civil government, but in what respects is it a moral virtue to submit to the ordinance of man. It is one part of our duty to mankind, in pure morality, to be "obedient to the powers that be."

The majesty of civil authority, so far as we have now any occasion to consider, is found in the rational dignity of humanity itself, where mankind stand together in a collective capacity. God may add his own revealed sanction to human government, and thus lay under obligation "for the Lord's sake," yet is there an inherent excellency in righteous human authority which

demands respect for its own sake. Under whatever form of sovereignty it may present itself, it is the official representation of the public will in regard to its own rights, and if the spiritual excellency of each man presents rights which in his own dignity demand universal respect, much more must official state authority which has, collected within itself, the right and dignity of every citizen, demand a respectful recognition. If that man is vicious who treats individual rights contemptuously, much more is that man vicious who "despises governments." Not merely that civil authority is useful, is it therefore venerable ; it could not itself be useful, except as arbitrary tyranny, were it not first in itself entitled to respect and reverence. The public personality speaks out in its governmental legislation, and the executive magistrate bears the sword of the whole body politic, and is official conservator of the rights and privileges of the entire commonwealth, and has thus in its own right the claim of respectful allegiance from every citizen.

Pure morality, thus, demands submission to government and obedience to human law, not merely in a legal spirit which is moved solely in the consideration of pains and penalties, but "for conscience sake." The government, being the true expression of the public will and the conservator of the public rights, is venerable in its authority, and all rebellion or disobedience is a contempt of "dignities," and thus a debasement of the spirit of the rebel. His contempt of government is the making of himself unworthy, and is thus a vice condemned by morality. The important duties under this maxim of obedience to government are :

1. SUBJECTION. This is to be manifested in obeying law ; in cheerfully yielding to the prerogatives of the officers of government ; in paying respect to all official forms, and complying with all its proclamations and special orders. The whole demeanor is to be that of a peaceful, quiet, contented, law-abiding citizen. All factions, mobs, riots, insurrections, lynch-law pro-

ceedings, are not only political crimes, but vices condemned by pure morality. All incendiary speeches or publications, and all illegal attempts to coerce the government in its political measures, are morally unworthy of every citizen.

2. TRIBUTE. If government exist it must be sustained in its expenses by the citizens. The revenue may come from varied sources, but in whatever way taxes are legally levied, morality forbids all evasion of the public claim. All frauds on the revenue laws, secretion of ratable property, or embezzlement of public money, are as much more immoral than the defrauding of a private person, as the dignity and rights of the State exceed in their claims to respect those of the individual. Tribute is as really due to the State, as the fulfilment of contracts with individuals, and the things of Cæsar are as truly to be rendered as the things of God.

3. SERVICE. Every man is bound to render that service to the State which in his circumstances is legally demanded. He may not shrink from official stations, or military duties when his country calls. He must judge if higher claims clash with the commands of his country and responsibly act accordingly, but in a righteous call of his country to any service, no citizen may hesitate and delay without becoming immoral. No government can last which cannot control the services of its citizens. All disrespect to the State is a disgrace to the man.

## II. DUTIES TO OTHER THAN MANKIND.

---

### CHAPTER V.

#### 1. DUTIES TO NATURE.

DUTIES to other than man must embrace all other being to which man owes any obligation. This will include Nature, both animate and inanimate, and God. We assume that, without a positive revelation, the existence of God would be known from his works ; and this knowledge of the being of God would impose its duties upon us in the light of our own reason, and thus in pure morality. Natural religion would bind to duties from the motive of *love* or *loyalty* to the God of nature, but as we here view the duties only in the light of man's *highest worthiness*, we do not at all enter the field of natural theology, but still keep within the field of pure morality. We only consider what are the duties, out of regard to his own highest worthiness, induced by adding to communion with his fellow-men communion with nature and with God.

##### 1. DUTIES TO NATURE.

##### 2. DUTIES TO GOD.

Our acquaintance with other orders of being is dependent upon revelation, and the intercourse of man with any other finite beings than the human family, is too partial to admit of any consideration in an ethical system.

In first considering our *duties to Nature*, we remark that no portion of nature has any endowment of rationality, and has thus no intrinsic excellency but only a relative utility. It is

means not end, and cannot thus bind in any duties for its own sake. It is for the use of such as have reason; a thing sub-subservient to personality; and while used by persons, may never be permitted to use them. Neither animate nor inanimate nature has any rights, and can be controlled by no ethical rules; nor can either have any place in a moral system on its own account, since it can neither push obligations upon others nor feel obligations imposed upon it.

But while for the sake of nature itself man can owe no duties to nature, yet for his own sake many duties originate in his connection with the world of nature around him. Nature has a reflex ethical bearing upon man, and he owes many duties to himself which refer to nature. As rational spirit he is bound to use nature rationally, not for any end in nature, but for the grand end of reason, and thus all of nature animate and inanimate, that can in any manner be made subservient to the ends of human dignity and worth, come within the sphere of ethical science and are involved in the considerations of pure morality. In the light of what is due to his own reason, man may see many duties incumbent upon him in reference to his treatment of nature.

The general maxim is: **USE BUT NOT ABUSE NATURE**, and this will include the following maxims in particular.

1. *Not wantonly to mar Nature.* Nature, animate and inanimate, is given into the hand of man so far as he can reach, and he is permitted to use it in any way conformed to his own ultimate end. He, as free cause, can affect nature and work many changes in her successions. But he is not permitted to mar the face of nature, nor wantonly and uselessly to injure any of her products, since nature is made reasonably, and he cannot wantonly mar it without doing despite to reason.

It is a disgrace to any man's spirit, if he has come to take pleasure in the destroying of a crystal, or the defacing of a gem; if he can amuse himself by wantonly crushing a flower,

or laying desolate any portion of nature's works. He is thereby fitting himself to engage in any ruthless undertaking. The next step will bring him to be cruel, and to delight in worrying and torturing sentient beings and destroying animal life. This debases still further, and when the man has descended so low that he can make animal-suffering his sport, and delight to inflict pain upon any living thing in air or earth or water, he has become not only an unsafe member of civil society, but a reproach and disgrace to humanity. We very properly call him inhuman.

There often appears a very early propensity to delight in destruction, and to exert the power possessed in desolating deeds ; but it is an early immorality, and the sad precursor of coming enormous viciousness.

2. *Convert Nature to thy use.* Man may not wantonly mar nature, yet must he directly use nature, that she may minister to the high ends of his spiritual being. Nature possesses no product too sacred for man. All nature is for man, not man for it. When reason requires, it is imperative upon him to use any thing that nature puts within his reach. Mineral, vegetable, animal, all are his ; and over the whole realm of nature he is enthroned in dominion. It is a virtue to use nature for his worthiness in any way ; it is a vice to neglect to serve himself of nature in any offered benefit.

3. *Beautify and perfect Nature.* It is now, as in Paradise, man's duty "to dress the earth and to keep it." It is no longer a paradise ; yet is it the duty of man, by industry and taste, to bring the whole earth as near as possible again to the primeval garden. A neglect to cultivate and adorn the earth and bring upon it the beauty which it might possess, is very much akin to that wanton mischief which would mar the beauty and goodness that it already possesses. Man uses nature ethically right, only when he strives to bring her as much as may be to subserve his wants, his taste, and his morals.

4. *Explore Nature scientifically.* Universal nature in its whole structure, the conformation of all its minute parts, and the entire order of its development, are as if there were rationality in nature herself, putting and keeping her laws in perfect analogy with the laws and forms of reason in the human mind. Had nature herself been otherwise connected, she would have been utterly unintelligible. All her phenomena must have been connected in their permanent substances and successive causes, or they could never have been determined, by any mind, to their places in space nor their periods in time. All objects of sense would have been a mere hap-hazard dance of appearances. Nature does not determine reason to be as it is ; she must herself conform to reason to be intelligible by reason.

Here is the grand text-book for the reason of man to study. When he has found the true law of nature in any of her thousand departments, he will ever find it conformed to the demands of reason, and the working without and the law within will completely harmonize. In all departments of natural science there are necessary and universal laws binding up all the parts in unity, and man is fulfilling the imperative of his moral being when engaged in investigating, classifying, and systematizing whatever of nature he can bring within his observation. He is thus studying and more fully apprehending himself, as he studies and apprehends the conformities of nature to himself. The Absolute Reason has enstamped himself upon his works, and the true interpretation of nature cannot contradict the eternal truths of reason in the soul of man. He has little faith in reason or God, who fears that truths in any department of God's revealing shall contradict each other.

5. *Use Nature as a discipline in virtue.* Nature is no more conformed to the reason of man in her philosophical order, than she is in her ethical connections. She is everywhere as right as she is beautiful and true. If the vice of man has not perverted

the order of nature, she will be everywhere working out what should be, and as it should be. If any thing works ethically wrong, it will be found to have had its perversion through some vicious interference. Thus the study of nature in its ethical connections is everywhere adapted to moral instruction and discipline. Not because there is greatest happiness in certain courses, and thus nature herself made the end of morality; but that greatest happiness comes in such courses as it should, and thus that nature herself is conditioned by morality.

And now man's highest dignity demands the perfection of moral culture, and thus that he use nature as his schoolmaster to bring him to virtue. All his wisdom may and should terminate in righteousness.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

### 2. DUTIES TO GOD.

It was a doctrine long ago held by Plato that there could not be any truth if there were no God. A truth independent of God, a truth which does not imply His absolute being and fulness is not only impossible, but is in itself a contradiction, and thus no truth, but a lie. The existence of God being apprehended, there immediately arises the consciousness of *moral* obligations to Him. That the finite spirit and the Absolute Spirit exist together, is sufficient to impose duties upon the finite in pure morality.

The general maxim inclusive of all these duties is, "WORSHIP GOD." The worship of which we here speak is that moral homage which it is a man's virtue to render to the Absolute Spirit, and which it would be a vice to withhold. We do not bring in the facts of dependence and perpetual communications

of good, which appeal to the sentiment of love ; nor the facts of unbounded fulness and goodness in God, which appeal to the confiding feeling of faith and hope ; for these are the basis of *religious* worship and service. We simply take the conception of finite spirits, not merely as existing in society with each other, but now as existing also in communion with God, the Absolute Spirit ; and on the ground of intrinsic excellency of spiritual being, there are the *moral* claims in the Absolute to a spiritual adoration from the finite, which pure morality alone can recognize. Such community of existence cannot be, but the finite spirit will debase itself if it will not bow in prostrate homage before the Absolute.

When the man stood alone in the sanctuary of his own spiritual being, he found an authority, which he was conscious would awaken the conviction of eternal infamy in himself not to respect and obey ; and when he stood in the presence of other spirits like his own, he was obliged to respect their rights, and to know that it would be a perpetual degradation in himself to trample on the least of those rights ; but now his eye sees the absolute God, and the sphere of his morality greatly changes. The claim to respect himself, and to honor the spirit of his fellow, becomes the claim to the profoundest homage in the presence of Jehovah. A much deeper infamy is incurred, in his own sight, not now to fall prostrate and adore. The same consciousness of what is due to spiritual excellency is here, but not now solely in the light of finite attributes ; he is here amid the glory that fills immensity and inhabiteth eternity ; and he deeply feels that a refusal to worship in such a presence must be the infamy of the second death. Of all immoralities, the greatest is to be morally irreligious.

This maxim, to "worship God," includes many duties, among the most considerable of which we here notice :

1. REVERENCE. This is purely a spiritual emotion. Nothing but a spirit can experience it, and this only in the presence

of a spirit. The animal may be made afraid, but never to revere ; and man may be made afraid in the presence of an animal, but never there to feel reverence. The respect which man is constrained to feel for the spiritual through all humanity, rises in proportion to the attributes of rationality there disclosed ; and in the presence of some hoary sage, he involuntarily uncovers his head and bows in obeisance ; but it is only before the Absolute that reverence is consummated ; and here, in the presence of God, the finite soul knows that nothing should hinder the complete surrender of all that he is, in humble consecration. Unreserved homage is due to God, and the profoundest reverence is itself the dignity of the human spirit. No man is so exalted as when utterly losing himself in his reverence for the Deity.

2. GODLY FEAR. This is other than simple reverence, though reverence may always accompany it ; and we express the difference when we speak of reverential awe. There is a fear which is altogether distinct from a constitutional apprehension of danger. The apprehension of great impending evil is a "fear that hath torment." It is a most unwelcome emotion, and man and beast shrink away from its experience. But godly fear has no pain, and excites no revulsion in the presence of its object. The most dreadful majesty is revealed ; a glory that is terrible ; the place is holy, and he puts off the shoes from his feet, and even expresses himself by saying, "I exceedingly fear and quake," and yet the man chooses to be there. He would withdraw from this presence, and change this emotion, for no other possible place or feeling. His full confidence in this dreadful Being makes even his terrible greatness delightful. This awful God is his father and his friend, and by so much the more as his majesty is fearful ; is his protection delightful. That very glory, which in its purity is to the wicked "a consuming fire," is to him a defence and an honor ; and his own soul burns with love and joy while he gazes with holy amazement. The fear

that would else be insupportably tormenting, becomes by his own congeniality of spirit with the object an adoring awe, which is sublimely ennobling.

3. HUMILITY. This, in its true meaning, is a virtue that proportions itself relatively to the being that exercises it. To the Absolute, there can be no place for humility; but to all finite beings, humility is a duty and a virtue. It consists in the assent of the spirit to take the precise position which is due to its own proportional intrinsic excellency. We speak not now of the humility of a sinner, which must partake of shame and remorse, but the humility of spiritual beings in the presence of the absolute Jehovah, as a moral virtue. Whatever grades of spiritual life there may be from human to angel, and through all the ranks of "thrones, dominions, principalities, and powers," that is humility in each, which, in reverent adoration of the Most High, cordially assents to its own place among the worshippers, and the highest in this classified rank, while he casts his crown before the throne and veils his face with his wings, will be as truly virtuous in his humility as the lowest. The righteous order would be as truly broken in the degradation of the higher as in the undue exaltation of the lower; and each is truly humble and morally virtuous in his humility, when he bows rejoicingly before God in the very place which his relative excellency assigns to him. There is no pride, no self-conceit, but the virtue of universal humility, in that world where God is too great to be either proud or humble, and where all finite being fills just the sphere of its own spiritual excellence with divine adoration and praise.

---

In the foregoing Chapters we have applied the ultimate Rule of right to the entire field of human conduct, so far as the duties in this field can be determined by the direct application of this Rule. The requirements of Positive Authority still

need to be considered, but our System of Moral Science as embraced in Pure Morality, is now complete. We here close this Part of our work by a few Aphorisms elicited from the investigation.

1. *Humanity can never escape from the colliding influences of animal appetites and spiritual imperatives.* Sometimes appetite and duty may fully accord ; sometimes an unruly appetite may seem to be mortified ; but at no time can the animal nature and the rational spirit be in combination, where there will not often be "the flesh lusting against the spirit," and calling for a constant watch and a strong restraint. Man's ethical life must perpetually be militant, and his highest worth can only be gained in that manly valor which alone conquers by a perpetual conflict. He should have the complacency of perpetual mastery, but he will never, in the flesh, have the blessedness of complete conquest. To find the serene bliss of heaven, he must drop the animal tabernacle, and thus lose the conflicting "law in the members."

2. *Virtue cannot consist in habit.* Man's ultimate rule demands great care in forming habits, inasmuch as many actions of his life will flow from habit, and have their effect upon himself and others ; but no action from mere habit can constitute virtue. This involves watchfulness and activity, valor and conflict ; the good will striving and ruling. However long-continued and apparently confirmed the habit may be, it is not safe trusting to it. An unwonted trial may at any hour come, and the long habit at once be broken through. While the good habit controls, it is not virtue ; and there is no security for any day that it will still control. Habit is mere facility from frequent repetition ; virtue is constant victory from stern perpetual conflict.

3. *Casuistry is not in finding principles, but whether particular facts come under the principles.* The ultimate Rule is clear in the self-knowledge of reason. Its imperatives are di-

rect from what is due to the inherent excellency of the spirit. The principles of pure morality are thus clear in their own light, when seen in their own ground. They stand in necessity, and are universal. Moral Philosophy, as a science, has thus only to deal with principles, and to set them out clearly in their true grounds.

But often real or supposed facts may be so ambiguous, and terms may often be so equivocal, that the nicest discernment may be needed to determine whether they come under the principle or not ; and all such cases give rise to questions of casuistry.

The science of pure morality has nothing to do with casuistry ; though the application of its principles in experience give occasion for frequent and often very difficult questions of casuistry.

4. *The following precise application of terms in morality may be here given :* All action under the constraint of the ultimate Rule is *duty* : and all action against duty is *transgression*. A transgression may be from physical weakness, and we thus term it the man's *infirmity*. It may be through the man's carelessness, and we call it his *fault*. It may be deliberate and determined, and we then call it his *vice*. There will be seen occasion hereafter for the distinction of vice as against a purely moral rule, and transgression of civil law which is *crime*, and also transgression of God's law which is *sin*. To the personal author of the transgression we *impute* the intention, and term this his *guilt* ; and when we refer to the retribution with which guilt is to be visited, we term the person to whom the guilt is imputed, *responsible*.

## SECOND PART.

---

### POSITIVE AUTHORITY.

---

#### I.

##### THE OCCASION FOR POSITIVE AUTHORITY.

**A** DIFFICULTY meets us in moral science the moment we step beyond the province of pure morality. If the ultimate rule of right be truly ultimate it must be universal; why is it not then all-sufficient, and how can there then be any other province in moral science than that of pure morality?

This difficulty is partly, not wholly removed when we remember that there are wrong-doers whom no constraint of the ultimate rule can control. Pure morality requires that these should not be left to their unbridled wills. It would be wrong if there were no power above them by which they should be restrained and constrained. Positive authority is therefore righteously demanded wherever there is any immorality.

But supposing there is no immorality? What if all are pure and virtuous, is there then any occasion for positive authority? At first view we might say no, for it might seem that pure morality should be ample for all the requirements of such a condition. But in fact we find in civil society that positive authority instead of lessening actually increases in the extent of its exactions as man grows more upright. The more civilized, the more virtuous a community becomes, the more laws it requires. Indeed so essential is law to civilization, and so characteristic of

it, that wherever man is found without law he is as Homer calls him,<sup>1</sup> a savage. The progress to a better state is actually seen, not in an increasing emancipation from law, but in an increasing subjection thereto. That is not the best government therefore which governs least, but that which enters most largely into the wants, the interests, and the daily life of its subjects. This is certainly true as an historical fact, and may help us in the apprehension of the true principle.

The whole difficulty vanishes in the vision that finite wills are fallible, and that individuals, however willing to act wisely, will be constantly meeting with questions where their actions will need to be determined by a higher wisdom than their own. Such a need will ever give occasion for exactly that control over human character and life which positive authority represents. So long as men are finite they will need the guidance of a government.

But while authority is another mode of constraining human conduct than pure morality, it may by no means contradict or subvert morality. Authority must conform to morality, and this brings its consideration within the field of Moral Science. The ultimate Rule of right must be so applied to all authority, as to determine that it is not an immoral and vicious authority. It is introduced as a necessary means of constraint where, either from the wickedness or the weakness of the finite will, pure morality will not admit of application, but as in no case and for no reason may authority ever be used in conflict with morality, all authority needs to be submitted to the rigid criterion of the ultimate Rule. It must thus come within the field of a pure moral science. It will not govern by morality, but it must govern in full accordance with morality.

---

<sup>1</sup> Iliad, ix. 62.

## II.

## THE PECULIARITY OF AUTHORITY.

AUTHORITY, as brought within the province of Moral Science, is *a right to legislate*. When this right promulgates its precepts without revealing its own reasons, and guards these precepts by pains and penalties, without giving an account of its own grounds of action to its subjects, it is termed *Positive Authority*. The point in which this authority is vested is termed *Sovereignty*. The same point of sovereignty is the source for all legislative, judicial, and executive action in the government.

In pure morality the rule by which the subject is to be guided reveals its reason in its own light ; but in positive authority the subject is guided by a rule whose reason is not revealed. In pure morality the ultimate Rule shows the subject by its own shining what he ought to do ; but in positive authority his duty is reflected to him through the medium of an outward proclamation. In pure morality the subject justifies his conduct through his knowledge of the ultimate Rule ; but in positive authority his justification rests upon his faith in his sovereign's will. In a word, the whole difference is the difference between a duty disclosed in the inward consciousness, and a duty declared through an outer command. In positive authority that which is wholly out of me is made to have dominion over that which originates within me, and the will of another is to be the lord over my will.

The claim of positive authority always demands and should ever receive the closest scrutiny ; for unless the authority be fully legitimated in its morality, it becomes the most vicious and detestable tyranny. It is the whole business of this Second Part of Moral Science to examine this claim, and to this we now betake ourselves.

Positive Authority, as already found, has varied modes of applying its constraint to human conduct, and thus we need to consider it under distinct Divisions. When applying pains and penalties, or offering rewards, it appeals solely to hope and fear, and the obedience so resulting is that of *mere legality*. When applying the constraint of love and reverence for the sovereign, and thus appealing solely to respect and regard for the authority itself, the obedience induced is that of *complete loyalty*. These may also be blended in one sovereignty, and the government use both. The first is found in *Civil Government*; the second in the *Divine Government*; and the last in *Family Government*. We shall examine each at large in its own order.

## FIRST DIVISION.

---

### CIVIL GOVERNMENT.

---

#### CHAPTER I.

##### THE STATE.

EITHER authority is, and this makes the state, or the state already is, and this makes its own authoritative government. On the supposition of the *first*, there may be two positions assumed by different parties. One, that God commissions some directly to govern, and their *divine right* gives authority to government and establishes the state. The other, that each person has the sovereignty over himself, and many such persons coming together make a state and a government by *compact*.

The theory of *divine right* makes all civil government Theocratic. God is the Supreme civil ruler, and the human magistrate is his vice-gerent. Such was the government of ancient Israel. For special ends, not here necessary to detail, God proposed to be the civil ruler as well as the tutelar Deity of the Hebrews, and was formally accepted as such by the popular voice. A constitution or platform of government was also proposed and formally adopted, and a solemn ratification of the whole and inauguration of the government occurred, as fully given in Exodus, 19th Chap. to the 25th. All the subsequent legislation given by God conformed to this original platform, called "the Book of the Covenant," and which was kept in the Ark, called hence "the Ark of the Covenant." God was hence-

forth their constitutional King, and the human magistrate held office and ruled under his appointment.

In this one instance only has God assumed such a relation. And in this, he so sanctioned and regarded popular rights, that he admitted the sovereignty of the Jewish people, and would not himself take the civil rule over the nation except by their express consent. Had the nation refused to accept the offer, it would have been the sin of ingratitude and contempt of such distinguished favor, but not the crime of rebellion against political sovereignty. Here, a thousand years before the time of Pericles, is the most ancient and valid recognition of the rights of popular freedom. We can better afford to lose all the examples of free institutions in Greece and Rome, than this one divine acknowledgment of the sovereign right of a people to determine their own form of government. The Divine Right of Kings is not here found, except as God has himself been popularly chosen as national ruler, and then as such adopted King he commissions whom he will to stand in his name before the people as the Lord's anointed. Since God has never offered and been accepted thus by any second nation, no other Kings than those of ancient Israel have so ruled by divine right.

The theory of a *voluntary compact* is a mere figment. Primitive governments were not so established. No state ever thus originated. Such a compact if made would pre-suppose an authority already existing to which the terms of the compact would need to conform in order to carry with them any obligation. A compact of buccaneers for purposes of piracy would give no authority to its decrees. An agreement to rob does not make it right to rob. Moreover, if the compact were made according to righteousness, it could not, on the supposition we are now considering, put its laws upon any recusants, nor rightfully drive away these non-complying persons. The compact could righteously bind no longer than the lives of the original contractors, and the next generation must have its own option to perpetuate

the state or not. Neither of these methods can make a state, for neither of them can authoritatively carry themselves into execution without already assuming the state itself to exist.

The *second* is the true position, that the state itself must exist in order that any civil government may be. And yet the state is in no sense a human product; though found wherever man is found, man no more makes the state than he makes himself. It is a condition of life into which he is born, as he is born into his manhood. He is by nature, as Aristotle terms him, a creature living in states.<sup>1</sup>

What then is the state? It would be easy to term it the source of law, the fountain of authority, the regulator of man's relations to his fellow-man, and either of these statements would be perfectly true, while no one of them would reach the full truth we need. Our definition should tell us what the state is in terms which contain its full explanation.

We approach such a definition if we note that the actual relationship among men is that of reciprocity and inter-dependence. Men are bound together as are the members of the living body, wherein if one member suffer all the members suffer with it, or one member be honored all the members rejoice together. Every member of the human family is a fellow-member of all the rest. Each has something to do for every other, and all have something to do for him. No man liveth unto himself, and no man dieth unto himself. No man finds good in the evil of his fellow-men. No nation prospers because another nation suffers adversity. The ill of one disturbs, and, in its degree, destroys the well-being of all. Each is so dependent upon all the rest, and all the rest are so dependent upon him, that there can be no blessing nor calamity, no deed of virtue or of vice, no birth nor death, though on another continent or in a distant isle of the sea, but that brings its living influence to each one of us,

---

<sup>1</sup> Πολιτικὸν ζῶον: Polit. i. 1.

and to every member of the race. The union of men is that of an organism, wherein each part is at the same time the means and end of all the rest.

This is not only true, but it is the most essential truth of human life. There is nothing so distinctively characteristic of a man as these reciprocal relations to his kind. If we could suppose him severed from these relations, he would be no longer a man, as a hand cut off from the body would be no more a hand, but only a compound of blood, bone, and muscle, going to decay. The old saying, one man, no man, *unus homo, nullus homo*, simply means that a man alone is not a man ; his manhood means his fellowship with other men.

But if the human family is thus connected,—connected as an organism,—then the place, the work, the obligations of each are fixed, and must be authoritatively declared by the principle of the organism itself. But this is exactly what is done by the state. All the obligations which the state imposes, the place and work which it assigns, are nothing more nor less than the most perfect reciprocity and interdependence among its subjects requires. All the laws of the state do but express the principle of this organic relationship among men. Civil law only affirms what place and work and obligations belong to men by virtue of the organic bond which holds them together. If truly law, it does but represent and declare the principle of a brotherhood of human hearts. If it attempts any thing other than this, and seeks the good of one person or class, and not the good of all, it is tyranny and not law.

All this prepares us for our definition of the state as *the Organic Unity of Mankind*. This definition explains and justifies the authority of the state. The principle of human fellowship and brotherhood is true and good in itself, for it is the principle of love, and the sufficient reason for all the requirements of love, and the all-sufficient ground for its authority is in the simple truth that love is reason.

The state is not the laws, nor the rulers, nor the collective body of the people ; for all these change while the state remains the same. The laws are but the mouthpiece of the state ; the rulers do but express and execute its will, and laws and rulers and people are all subject thereunto.

In this ideal conception the state is one, and yet there are actually many states, as we say that man is one while there are many men. But as the individual man is a man only as the universal manhood is mirrored and expressed in him, so the individual state is a state, only as the universal state, the ideal state finds itself typified and actualized therein. In other words, a given community can only justify its claim to be a state on the ground that the organic unity of mankind requires its separate existence as such.

---

## CHAPTER II.

### THE STATE REQUIRES A GOVERNMENT.

CIVIL government is not the state any more than are a man's words and actions the man himself. As a man's words express his thoughts, and his actions accomplish his will, so civil government should, and at its best estate does, only announce and fulfil the idea and the requirements of the state. But as a man's words may be false and his actions contradictory, so a government may belie the behests of the state, and, like a false man, become a detestation and a curse. Yet, however perverse it may be, and however liable to abuse, civil government is an indispensable necessity for the state. The organic unity of mankind could not have a history without it.

This is seen in the light of the following particulars :

1. *Many must be governed who cannot see what is politically*

*right.* The end of all political authority, and the ground of all right to exercise it, is found in the requirement of the organic unity of man. But if some minds cannot see this principle, or how the facts come under it, and cannot thus be controlled by it, this would not abolish the rights of the public, nor the claim upon the state that the public peace remain unbroken.

Such subjects every state has, and is bound to control them. Children in minority, and ignorant but well-meaning adults, need the constant interpretation of their duty by the state through its legitimate government.

2. *Many who see their duty will not do it.* No matter how much enlightenment of the intellect there may be, a perverse will loves darkness rather than light, and in the actual state of human society upon earth, there are always those whom no other constraint than that of pains and penalties can control. Civil government is necessary, therefore, not only to declare their duty to the well-disposed, but to secure its performance from the ill-disposed.

3. *There are many practical matters which only a government can settle.* Society has many wants which cannot be supplied from individual study and action, and can only be established by governmental authority.

At what age shall a man be rendered civilly competent to make contracts? What forms shall make contracts binding? How shall property be regulated, exchanged, or transmitted by hereditary descent? How shall the litigation of human rights be determined, and what shall be the forms of judicial decisions? Who shall be authorized Judges? And what forms of electing them? And how invest with their office? All these, and a thousand other matters, must be regulated in some way in every community; the business of society could not go on a day without it. There must be here some uniform order of operation, and no one method settles its own expediency above all others. Only governmental authority can avail here. The rights and

peace of a community cannot be preserved without laws enforcing such regulations by adequate sanctions.

Man is thus manifestly made to be governed. Without positive law society cannot exist. It cannot be shown that even holy beings can be kept holy without positive enactments ; and in a community of depraved beings, the public freedom cannot be safe an hour without law. A state of anarchy is a state of violence and wrong. Man, as a social being, is in his normal condition only when under law.

That Positive Authority is precisely adapted to meet those necessities which the nature of man in society creates, will still farther appear in the following particulars :

*It augments to the guilty the dangers of disturbing the public freedom.* Leaving all the ethical restraints of duty and remorse for its violation in full force, it goes further and threatens its own positive punishments against transgression. There is the strong probability at least, put before every one who would invade the public freedom, that he will be detected, convicted, and punished. This probability is proportioned to the virtue and vigor of the state government, and by so much is the danger of guilt enhanced and the wicked restrained.

*It adds all the influence of personality to ethical principle.* Ethical principle is as much violated in criminal action as before the law was declared, but in the law there is something more than a principle. It represents all the interests, sympathies, and immunities of personality. The crime is not against abstractions and idealities, but against the real persons represented in the legislation. It violates their will and invades their social freedom and peace, and is an outrage to their sentiments and feelings, and thus an offence against sentient rational beings. Thus law, as the expressed will and embodied sentiment of the community, appeals to all that is kind, tender, and humane in every subject that he should not selfishly violate it, and thereby adds much strength to ethical restraint.

*It puts the retribution beyond all interposition from the criminal.* If there were nothing but the pangs of remorse and conscious self-debasement, the guilty might find many ways of softening or stifling these retributions of pure morality. The criminal would need only to cover his conscience by prejudices, apologies, excited passions, or to keep his attention perpetually absorbed in other interests. But here the injured public is the executor and avenger of law, and all the interests and freedom of the community press upon the state sovereignty to see that the commonwealth receive no detriment.

*The duty is made plain by the distinct declaration of the law.* Where ignorance might hesitate from its weak apprehension, the law speaks clearly; where practical principles are equivocal, the law expresses them distinctly and definitely; where practice must have some standard, and which from the nature of the case might be any one of many methods, the law directly settles which and how. Statute law, thus, in all practical measures, gives clearness to duty beyond what the reason in pure morality would supply.

The state must legislate, and by legislation it meets the want of social freedom.

While the state, as the organic unity of mankind, can never be wrong, and the law as expressive of the requirements of this unity must always be right, and always authoritative, yet governments and statutes, made by men, are not only often faulty but are always fallible, and therefore never can be absolutely universal in their application. Civil government at the best is ever liable to meet with particular cases like the following where it must waive what in general would be its undisputed right of coercion.

1. *Cases where all civil penalty is impotent.* Providential occurrences may throw the citizen into circumstances, where the danger will prompt to action as much or even more than any threatening which the government might apply in counter-

action. The government is here wholly paralyzed, and can only pass by in inaction. Nature is stronger than a statute could be made, and all legislation would be empty. When two shipwrecked men seize an oar, or are in a boat that can save only one ; or when in any other condition a man is already in a greater extremity than any threatening of the law can be to him, the attempt to interpose civil law will be folly. The question is not for the claim of morality, or the demands of piety ; whether conscience or God will condemn ; but solely, what can human law do ?

In all such cases the government excuses itself from any interference, and throws off all responsibility by admitting its own impotence. Its valid defence to all claim from public freedom, in such cases, is in the standing-law maxim for the occasion, — *Necessity has no law*. This, however, does not apply to cases of great personal hazard and recklessness in the exposure of others. The engineer of a steam-engine may be more exposed than any other man, but this is not a case where his carelessness or recklessness would be beyond the reach of law. He may be made to feel that, in addition to all the hazard of death by an explosion, there may be the still additional hazard of penal law if he escape the first danger. The cases where law fails are where law at the time can add no stronger coercion than the exigencies already existing.

2. *Where civil law, in its general enactment, would induce particular injustice and injury.* All legislation must be more or less general in its included application. There cannot be laws designed and adapted to every particular case. Their particular application depends wholly upon the facts of each case as coming within the general scope of the law. The general laws of currency may liquidate a claim by a very depreciated value in the coin ; a bargain in any kind of property may be legally enforced, even though the action of the government may have very much changed the market price of the commodity. Not

unfrequently, the very laws designed by the government for the conservation of the rights of men and the public freedom, when carried literally out in execution, would greatly violate equity in particular cases, and be greatly oppressive to the citizen. The government cannot legislate against itself, nor can it permit that its legislation should be disregarded, but here the execution of its own laws is a plain iniquity.

In such cases the government relieves itself from responsibility, and sustains its authority, by giving jurisdiction to courts of equity. The statute law is left to all future use upon its proper principle, but a higher principle of moral equity overrules the particular case, and under well-known regulations the court of chancery decides the case as the general statute would not. The apology to law is the maxim, "*The extremity of the law is extreme injury.*"

3. *Critical exigencies in the nation itself.* A special distress, a national calamity, the danger from hostile invasion or internal insurrection, may throw a state into such critical exigencies as no existing laws could meet, and the administration carried out in its legal forms would jeopard the commonwealth. Various expedients have been resorted to in such cases. A dictator has been appointed for the occasion, with discretionary power. The magistrate has set the law aside, and taken the responsibility to the state to act without law; the general has declared martial law, and subjected civil authority to military rule; and thus the nation may have been saved at the expense of discarding its own legislative authority. When the state afterwards reviews such violence done to its own laws, it apologizes for the temporary usurpation or exercise of arbitrary power, by saying, "*the laws are silent amid arms.*"

While thus the state has authority to legislate, and to coerce by pains and penalties obedience to its legislation for the ends of freedom, there are cases where either this is impracticable, or where it would defeat the very end of law, and in such cases all coercion is dispensed with.

## CHAPTER III.

## THE RECTITUDE OF STATE AUTHORITY.

WHILE government is a necessity for the state, and may righteously enforce its enactments, it by no means follows that every government is necessary or righteous. We are not bound to obey because some have assumed to command, nor because they have acquired power to crush resistance. This power may still be usurpation and tyranny. On the other hand, authority may constrain conscience as a duty without the application of its power. Even when the rightness of the precept is not at all apprehended, the naked will of sovereignty is enough to fix obligation, but it must be sovereignty standing on right authority. This is where the principles of moral science reach to the very foundation of all civil government, and it is a matter of the highest importance to determine the ground on which the rectitude of human authority, as it goes out in legislation, must be made to stand. The consideration will demand two particulars :

- I. THE POINT IN WHICH SOVEREIGNTY SHOULD BE PLACED.
- II. THE LINES WITHIN WHICH SOVEREIGNTY SHOULD ACT.

All civil legislation must emanate from some point, and that point must be determined by ethical principles, in order that the behests of state sovereignty may reach the public conscience and bind to obedience in its own right, and not merely because of its power.

The first topic of inquiry is : WHERE SHALL THE SOVEREIGNTY BE PLACED ?

This inquiry must be answered in the light of the ultimate end of all action in civil authority. We need civil government solely that men may find themselves in a brotherhood of fellow-

helpers everywhere. All political action must be subordinate to this end of the organic unity of men. It is thus manifest :

1. *That the general sovereignty is in the state itself.* Civil government does not make the state, but the state makes the government, and gives it all its authority. The state is not only without a king, but before, above, and in order to all kingly prerogative. No possible claims of a *jure divino* authority, in the sense that God has made the governors and they make the state, can be sustained by any ethical principle. God has not otherwise ordained the powers that be, than by making men social, rational, and free, and thus necessary to be governed ; and then in his providence throwing them together where they must institute such government, and be ethically bound to respect and obey it.

But while the state is thus the general depository of all sovereign authority, this can only be exercised through the establishment and administration of civil government. Competent officials must be provided and clothed with the authority of the state sovereignty, and as thus authorized, they govern in the name of the state. In this is found the occasion for the varied forms of civil government prevalent in different ages and places. Monarchies, Oligarchies, Republics, Democracies, have been instituted accordingly as the genius of the state has brought out and executed its powers of sovereignty.

Without resting in the *dictum*, "that the form which is best administered is best," we will look for the deeper principle on which all forms must be administered, and thus that form which can, in a given case, alone be legitimate. The least deviation from the point of ethical right so far vitiates the sovereignty, that as the less consistent it should remove and give place for the more consistent ; but in practice, the infringement of the organic unity must ever be estimated in determining upon any forcible change of sovereignty.

2. *Certain relations may indicate the probable point of right sovereignty.* The relation of Creator and creature, parent and

child, might be an index of where we should look for the point of sovereignty in the Divine and the Family Government. From the relation alone we should doubtless conclude, that the Creator is to govern the creature, and the parent to govern the child. And in the same way, it might be a general index that the relations between experience and inexperience, learning and ignorance, age and youth, majority and minority, etc., should give sovereignty to the former in each case.

But there is nothing in these relations which can do more than indicate *à priori* probabilities. No one of them can be an ethical ground out of which springs the right to govern. If a Creator could be conceived who was malevolent, he would from his creative agency have derived no right to enforce his malevolent will. The father may become so imbecile, or be so depraved, that though a father in his relation still, yet shall he have no right to govern his own children. And so experience, and learning, and age, and the will of a majority may be leagued with tyranny and altogether wrong in governing. The inherent qualifications required in a righteous civil government are only seen in the light of what the organic unity requires.

3. *There must be peculiar natural qualifications.* Where there is natural incompetency to attain the ends of human government, there can be no right to the place of sovereignty ; and if assumed sovereignty be in that position, the duty is to abdicate it at once. If in the state there be not found the possession of natural qualities for a perfect civil rule, then must the government be so far imperfect. All civil government must, in the nature of the case, partake more or less of human imperfection ; but the ethical claim for the sovereignty is the highest natural qualities attainable ; and this highest qualification attainable, though not perfect, will give a valid ground, so far as natural qualities are concerned, for sovereign authority in the administration.

There should be the highest attainable intelligence to appre-

hend the ends of government and the means for attaining them, and the most efficient faculties to use these means in the attainment of such ends. If from any failure of knowledge or power the government fails of attaining its legitimate end, the sovereignty is inherently in fault, and the right of every citizen is plain in its demand that the sovereign administration be changed. Where there is natural incompetency to govern, nothing can give an ethical right to the place of sovereignty.

4. *There must be the peculiar moral qualifications.* Competency of natural faculty may be connected with moral qualifications so unfit or perverse as to vitiate all title to sovereignty. The power that can govern well, but will not, can have no more right to the place of sovereignty than that which is naturally incompetent. The ethical claim is for the highest security of attaining the end of government, and for this, moral no less than natural qualifications are essential.

There must be the love of public liberty, patriotism, benevolence, righteousness, veracity, and in fine all the moral qualities which secure that the natural competency shall be faithfully applied. In a word, there must be self-forgetfulness and a readiness to make all sacrifices for the public good. The righteous ruler will not seek his own. His unwillingness to contribute himself and his to the requirements of the universal love and brotherhood, would vitiate his title to sovereignty as truly as his inability to see what these requirements are. The government may quite as well fail for incompetency as for depravity.

It should be remarked here, that the perfect freedom and execution of the public choice may not be attainable by any human sovereign, inasmuch as still some subjects may transgress, and each act of transgression is so far an interference with public peace and freedom; but the sovereignty has a valid moral title when it possesses and exerts the highest attainable qualifications in the service of good government. Its title to sover-

eignty is not vitiated by the offences and crimes which it could not prevent.

And it should also be further remarked, that the characteristics and condition of a community must be consulted to determine where this highest qualification for sovereignty may be found. In proportion to the intelligence and virtue of a people, the action of sovereignty may be democratic, but in proportion to the ignorance and depravity of the people is a popular government the most destructive of public freedom. Nothing is more tyrannical than an excited passionate populace ; and, in such a community, for the sake of the state, the sovereignty must be removed from the people proportionally to their degradation, and the government become monarchical. The point of sovereignty must be just where there is the highest natural and moral qualifications for securing the requirements of the state. There Morality must place it, and if any thing put the sovereignty somewhere else, the right is so far perverted and discarded.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

### THE RECTITUDE OF STATE AUTHORITY.

#### II. THE LINES WITHIN WHICH SOVEREIGNTY SHOULD ACT.

WHEN the sovereignty is legitimate, it has still its sphere of action, and may legislate and administer its laws only within a prescribed field of jurisdiction. Beyond the lines drawn by certain clear principles, the attempted action of sovereignty becomes assumption and usurpation, and all allegiance to it is nullified in its own wrong action. The principles by which the lines are drawn for the right action of sovereignty are as follows :

1. *The sovereignty may not attempt action beyond its own capacity for governing.* When sovereignty attempts to legislate or execute law beyond its capacity, it acts in blindness and weakness, and most surely perverts its end and puts in jeopardy the public good, by its own ignorant and imbecile attempts to subserve it. Ignorant legislation and feeble, inconstant administration are sure precursors of many oppressive burdens, and ultimately induce anarchy. All things and all persons which the sovereignty is competent to use in the service of the community are legitimately in its hand for this purpose, but what it knows not how to use for this end it may not rightfully touch. All ignorant tampering with the laws and blind experiments in legislation, by any sovereign, and all crude attempts at reformation beyond his clear discernment, are as much morally forbidden to him as to any private citizen. The sovereignty is conferred that it may wisely and not blindly administer the government of the state.

2. *Sovereignty may not legislate beyond the subject's capacity for obedience.* In a realm of free wills there is no obedience to law where there is no choice to obey. But there can be no choice to obey and hence no righteous requirement of obedience where there is no ability to obey. No tyranny can be more intolerable than a government demanding impossibilities; and such demands, if made, can impose no other obligation than that of indignant resistance.

3. *It may not attempt the execution of law beyond its plain promulgation.* It is the business of sovereignty to provide for the promulgation of its enactments, and it is stopped in execution righteously where the law has not been proclaimed. This involves the intelligible nature of the legislation, the language in which the laws are communicated, and the manner of publication to the people. Laws in themselves beyond the subject's power of apprehension, or inadequately expressed, or imperfectly published, carry no binding force to the subject, and of

course the sovereign can in such cases righteously apply no penalties for not observing them. The wilful or careless neglect of the subject to ascertain what the published law is, must rest upon his own responsibility ; but there must, previously to such responsibility, have been the opportunity given by the sovereign for knowing his edicts.

4. *It may not legislate in violation of pure morality.* The public good can consist only with public morality, and any civil restraint against ethical claims would itself be tyranny. Sovereignty may often righteously legislate in matters indifferent to morality, where public practice must have some authorized and fixed standards, and thus make that a matter of duty which before had no obligation ; but when civil authority attempts to break over the barriers of moral right, and command any thing which it would be unworthy of man to perform, it nullifies its own authority by running against the ultimate test of all authority, and can only provoke contempt and universal reprobation from all virtuous beings.

5. *It may not legislate against Divine Authority.* The Divine Authority is the authority of the Absolute Reason, and there can be nothing reasonable or authoritative which conflicts with its claims. The state therefore, which, as the organic unity of mankind, is reason expressed in human fellowship, is and must be ever in accord with reason, and no government or statute can express the real will of the state, or be righteous or obligatory, which sets itself against a command of Absolute Reason. In such an attempt of civil sovereignty, it is every man's duty to respect the old, noble declaration of the primitive Apostles, "Whether it be right in the sight of God to hearken unto men more than unto God, judge ye." *Acta, iv. 19.* God is the rightful sovereign of all sovereignties, "the King of kings and the Lord of lords."

These principles, fairly applied, will give the true point of sovereignty, and the lines within which it should act, either as

legislator, judge, or executor of the law. The commands of righteous sovereignty are binding upon every subject, and with righteous authority, it may often be necessary to stand upon its own sovereignty alone, and in the eye of the subject present nothing else than the unequivocal declaration of its own will. The public good often demands obedience to sovereign mandates, in which no other right is seen than the rightness of the authority commanding, and the conscience of every subject is bound by it.

---

There are some peculiarities in the action of sovereignty, demanded by considerations of public freedom, the statement of which may most appropriately be made in the closing of this Chapter.

*Division of the functions of sovereignty.* In practical working, it is found expedient to separate the functions of sovereignty, and distribute the legislative, the judicial, and the executive, each into different hands. The imperfection of humanity renders the legislator liable to a partial and undue estimate of the laws of his own enacting, and that he should regard them in some measure from his own share in the making of them, and not solely from their bearing upon public freedom. It is not safe that the legislator should be the judge of his own laws, nor, for the same reasons, that the judge should execute his own decisions. The bias of personal prejudice and private interest is best excluded by separating these functions of sovereignty to different officials.

And then again, each one of these has in practice further checks and balances imposed, in popular governments, for the sake of securing the public freedom better.

In the case of THE LEGISLATIVE, there are, *first*, the constituting of the same into *two bodies, or houses*. One a more popular representation, and the other standing upon a more

general constituency, and all legislation necessarily receiving the majority of votes in each. And, *secondly*, the interposition of a *veto*. To arrest and check rash and hasty legislation, this power of putting a *veto* upon legislative enactments is instituted under certain regulations, and ordinarily lodged in the chief magistrate of the nation, who may refuse to give his sanction to particular bills which have already passed both houses. When such *veto* is interposed, another deliberation of the legislature is demanded, and usually a larger vote than a majority is required for the final enactment of the *vetoed* law. When all this is instituted and used for the greater security of the public freedom, it is in full accordance with the imperatives of political ethics.

In the case of THE JUDICIARY, there are, — *first, courts of appeal*. In this way the decisions of one court are reviewed by another, and if found erroneous, the former decision is reversed or set aside. Such appeals may be made to pass through certain forms, and the way lie open to several successive tribunals, but the end of all is to be found in the greater security of the public freedom. And, *secondly, courts of equity*. The operation of general laws may bring, in particular cases, a denial of justice, or, indeed, great injustice. Courts of equity are established for judging, under certain fixed principles, otherwise than the arbitrary claims of law would demand.

In the case of the EXECUTIVE, there is granted *the power of pardon*. The ends of freedom may sometimes be consistent with, and perhaps frequently be best attained by, the pardon of convicted criminals. If there has been any error in judgment, or if it be deemed that the ends of justice, or which is the same thing, the public freedom, may be as well subserved ; the power of pardon is lodged ordinarily with some member of the executive, and sometimes with particular conditions and restrictions. The remission of punishment consistently with the demands of the organic unity, is the end to be attained in such a power, and

should be so used only. It is always a responsible and a difficult matter to dispense pardons safely.

The whole adjustment and operation of the civil government, must be solely in the light of what the organic unity of men demands. That is the best government and those the best statutes which will best bind individuals and nations together as a brotherhood of fellow-helpers. The government which the state requires is that which shall express the principle of the state, and when this principle is expressed it has authority, not because a monarch or a legislature has decreed it, or because it has been adopted by the agreement of a majority, but because it is the voice of the original reason in man, which is, says Richard Hooker,<sup>1</sup> "laid up in the bosom of God," which commands, says Cicero,<sup>2</sup> "what ought to be done," which declares, says Demosthenes,<sup>3</sup> "what is just and honorable," and whose utterances, says Sophocles,<sup>4</sup> "are not of to-day nor of yesterday, and no man can tell when they came."

---

## CHAPTER V.

### REWARDS AND PUNISHMENTS.

REWARDS and punishments are technically termed the sanctions of Law. They are the retributions annexed to the precept by which the precept becomes a law. Both rewards and punishments are included as retributions, but the meaning of both, and the idea at the basis of each may be best seen from a clear view of the true doctrine of punishment.

1. *The meaning and ground of punishment.* Literally pun-

---

<sup>1</sup> Ecclesiastical Polity, I. iii. 1.

<sup>2</sup> De Legibus, i. 6.

<sup>3</sup> Orat. 1, cont. Aristog.

<sup>4</sup> Antigone, v. 456.

ishment means pain ; it is pain inflicted upon the breaker of a law by the giver of the law.

Whenever the subject of a law breaks the law his will is thereby brought in exact conflict with the will of his sovereign. But since both these two wills cannot be maintained, one must yield, which cannot be that of the sovereign, since if the sovereign yields, he yields his throne ; and if his sovereignty is just, he becomes thereby unjust. Of course therefore he must make the subject yield, which he can only do by inflicting upon him as his sovereign's will what he could never choose as his own will, and this he does by making him suffer. Suffering is the one thing, the only thing which no one could choose to experience for its own sake, and it is therefore the very means, the true and perfect means by which the sovereign shall compel the transgressor to acknowledge the supremacy which he had chosen to refuse. By this suffering the transgressor is punished. Suffering is thus the means and not the end of punishment. The transgressor is punished not that he may suffer, but he is made to suffer that he may thereby be punished. The end of punishment is to assert the supremacy of the sovereign over the subject who by his transgression had affirmed himself supreme.

Punishment is not retaliation, as though the subject had injured the sovereign in a certain degree for which an equal injury is returned to him. This would be the absurdity of making one evil or injury cancel another. Moreover, the action of the sovereign upon the subject in punishment is of a wholly different sort from the action of the subject upon the sovereign in transgression. The transgression has not injured the sovereign, but only the subject ; and the punishment is in reality only the manifestation or expression of the injury which the subject has wrought upon himself. In other words, the free will of the subject maintains its normal freedom only in obedience to his righteous sovereign. Disobedience is the surrender of freedom. "Whosoever committeth sin is the servant of sin."

In the very transgression, whereby the subject affirms himself a sovereign, he becomes in reality a slave. His freedom is actually gone, though he does not yet know it; and his punishment manifests this to himself, and to all beholders. His choice has become his destiny.

2. *The righteousness of punishment.* Punishment may therefore be defined as *sovereignty asserting itself over the transgressor*, and its righteousness is clearly seen in the righteousness of the sovereignty which it asserts and vindicates. The requirements of the organic unity of mankind are right, for they are the requirements of reason itself. The civil government which embodies and executes these requirements is therefore right, and the sanctions, — whether rewards or punishments, — whereby such a government is maintained, must also be right. The righteousness of the state and of its requirements, and their execution, is the same righteousness throughout. It is the righteousness of reason expressing and actualizing itself.

Hence the righteousness of punishment is not grounded in its tendency to reform the transgressor. The reform of the transgressor is of course important to the community of which he is still a member, but beyond any good to any transgressor, whether it be his reform, his freedom, his happiness, or his life, is the one supreme good of the unimpaired supremacy of the government on which every good of the community depends. Moreover, if we think a moment, we see that the righteousness of punishment must rest in something back of its tendency to reform, for it could have no such tendency unless it were righteous to start with.

Again if it be said that the threat of punishment will restrain from crime, and we seek in this its justification, the immediate and sufficient answer is that punishment cannot be right because it is threatened, but it can only be righteously threatened because itself is right.

Still farther, if one claims that the infliction of punishment is

right only on the ground that it will restrain others from crime, the question comes : Why then is one person punished rather than another? And if the answer be that the person punished has transgressed, the question at once presents itself : What is it in transgression which causes the transgressor to be selected for punishment? To this there is no stable and self-sufficient answer if we ignore that denial of a righteous sovereignty in which the very core and marrow of transgression consists, and that affirmation of the sovereignty which is the stable ground and self-sufficient end of punishment.

3. *The degree of punishment.* There must be some measure for the penalties annexed to laws ; and, on the one side, this must not be so lenient as to invite the public contempt, nor, on the other hand, may it be so severe as to provoke the charge of cruelty and excite the horror and hatred of the community. A number of considerations must come into the account, in order rightly to estimate the degree of penalty which the sovereign authority righteously requires.

(1.) *The extent to which the vicious choice interferes with the public freedom.* As the civil authority is to maintain the freedom through which alone the organic unity of its subjects has play, the heinousness of any crime must be measured by the degree in which this freedom has been thereby violated. Petty larceny does not so extensively conflict with this as midnight robbery, nor the taking of property clandestinely as the taking of life violently. The constraint against the greater crime must be by the greater penalty, other things being equal. Hence, in all cases of estimating the due degree of legal penalty, one item to be carefully weighed is the enormity of the offence against the liberty of the people. The purpose to vindicate authority must be proportioned to the importance of the law, and this is determined only in the light of the end of all civil authority.

(2.) *The strength of the criminal choice is also to be estimated.* Public freedom is the more endangered, the more de-

terminated and inveterate is the choice in conflict with it. A settled, long-cherished purpose to do evil is more heinous than the same act put forth under sudden temptation or high excitement. Against the former there must be interposed the stronger restraint. Whatever indicates the greater strength of the criminal choice will give an index also of the higher penalty which must be put to guard against it. This may be seen in the repetition of the offence, the surrounding restraints that have been overcome, or the violent and outrageous manner of committing the crime. Whatever determines the deeper depravity of the criminal choice must also demand a corresponding degree of severity in the penalty.

(3.) *The difficulty of detection must also be regarded.* The danger to the community is not always in the direct proportion to the invasion of the public freedom in the act itself. Some crimes are, in their own nature, more difficult of detection than others, and more impracticable to be guarded against by the public. On this account there is the greater hazard from them, in the stronger expectation of secrecy, or of non-resistance, and thus the higher probability of impunity. This difference should, as nearly as practicable, be counterbalanced by the greater degree of penalty. Thus with the counterfeiting of the coin of the country, forgery, perjury, etc. In the case of some aggravated crimes, the penalty itself being death, there is a compensation given for the difficulty of detection by a more liberal rule for admitting testimony. In the case of rape, arson, etc., the injured party may be a competent and sufficient witness, with the corroborating circumstances.

(4.) *When the crime is directly against the sovereignty, the highest penalties are demanded.* Sovereignty holds the condensed authority of the state in one point, and a crime against this is the highest the state can know, or the subject can commit. All other crimes are against individuals; but an offence against the sovereignty, as such, strikes directly against the

authority of the whole, and would cleave down the public freedom in the destruction of its only safeguard at a single blow.

In this is the crime of *high treason*, and it should call forth all the force of state authority to its utmost extent. The occasion and circumstances of the crime, except as indicating the desperate and determining choice of the traitor, cannot be taken into the account. Whatever the occasion, this stroke direct at the sovereignty involves the very existence of the government, and must be met and overcome, if necessary, by calling out all the resources of the commonwealth. It is a commitment in which is at stake the existence of the parties. If one lives, the other must fall ; and thus if the government would not consent to its own destruction, it can have no other resource but the destruction of its enemy. Here, the highest penalty is demanded, for the sovereignty is bound to sustain its own being to the full extent of its power.

These are the principles to be applied in determining the degree of penalty. It may often be difficult to give the exact degree, and questions of political casuistry may arise, demanding the highest political experience and wisdom ; but the true course is to attain the right principles, and apply them as judiciously as practicable. Criminal codes will demand frequent revision ; the principles will last, the facts perpetually vary.

Sanctions which are completely within the interest of public freedom can never, on one side, become weak and contemptible, nor on the other, cruel and revengeful. All that is within the reach of the state is given into its hand that it may be used for the end of freedom in the maintenance of the organic unity of its subjects, and the most severe penalties are righteous if inflicted in subserviency to this end. Should it be objected that capital punishment is no longer necessary to the administration of a safe government, since the elevation in morals and patriotism, and the degree of civilization attained, has secured that milder penalties will sufficiently guard human life ; this might

be an open inquiry for fair discussion and decision, whether in the given circumstances such has become a matter of fact or not. But the principle does not admit of question, whether, if the organic unity or the public freedom demand capital punishment, the government has a right to threaten and inflict it. If something may as securely sustain the public freedom, the government may dispense with this and yet fulfil its end ; but if nothing else will do, the state must use capital punishment, since it must guard and maintain itself by any means practicable. Life is not so sacred as that for which life is given, and if the opportunity to attain the ends of human life cannot be maintained but by the infliction of death upon such as disturb it, the government of the state is bound, by its mission to humanity, to inflict that extreme penalty.

It may be argued that sanguinary punishments tend to make the people barbarous ; but in the one crime of murder, it is a more important and probable opinion, that a disuse of capital punishment will directly tend to demoralize the public. The conviction that the murderer deserves to die must be met by civil sanctions, or the very teachings and influence of the law will be to lower the standard of pure morality, and deprave the public sentiment, by making the life of man less sacred in the statute book than it is in natural conscience.

---

A general view of the nature and rectitude of State Authority has now been attained, but a particular application may be assisted by giving some prominent examples. We shall need three Chapters, under the following captions : —

- The position of the citizen in reference to the government.
- The position of the government in reference to the citizen.
- The position of one state in reference to others.

## CHAPTER VI.

## THE POSITION OF THE CITIZEN IN REFERENCE TO THE GOVERNMENT.

WHILE the state as the organic unity of mankind must always be right, and its requirements always obligatory, civil government will always be restricted in its rights by the rights of its subjects, and it is important for us to note here, what the citizen may claim, and what he may not claim, as against the government to which he is amenable.

1. *Every citizen is in some respects quite beyond all interference from civil authority.* The grand originary right of all rights is the freedom of every man to seek the attainment of his highest worth of moral character. It is in his capacity to attain and maintain a moral character, that man becomes a person and is not a thing.

His right to pursue the choice of his highest happiness is always subservient to this, that in attaining his happiness he should always subordinate it to his righteousness. Freedom in the pursuit of happiness is always to be controlled by what is due to righteousness. This originary right can never be given up by any one, nor forcibly taken from another by any one, nor even claimed as a sacrifice from any one for the freedom of all. The state never can demand, and the government never should demand, the immorality of its humblest citizen, as the price to be paid for its political liberty. Inasmuch as civil authority exists only for the organic unity of its subjects, and as this can never be found, but is always lost through unrighteousness, it follows that no high political sovereignty can at all lay its hand upon the citizen's originary right to the attainment of his highest moral worth.

There are thus individual rights which lie quite above all

righteous interference from the civil authority; against which no statute should lift up its sanctions; and for the sake of which, if the operation of general statutes come in conflict, the government in its judicial capacity should declare the statute a nullity and set aside its penalty.

Among such original rights, may be mentioned the following:—

*Equality in freedom.* I may demand of the civil authority, that it shall permit me to be as free as another, in my own right. The state can never use its law, nor can it permit any citizen so to use it, as to domineer over and oppress any individual. A government which legislates against the many for the sake of a few, or against any part of the community for the sake of another, contradicts the very idea of the state, and is a tyranny which has belied itself.

*Unrestrained thought and belief.* Thought and belief have not yet become choice, and as thought and faith, can never come within the jurisdiction of the civil authority. No conservation of public freedom demands any interference with private thought and belief, and it is only as choices and purposes are formed which go out in overt action after their objects, that the government has any power or right to interpose and repress.

*Freedom of conscience.* Pure morality and religious piety stand quite beyond the jurisdiction of civil sovereignty. My right to my own self-approbation in both morals and religion is beyond all other requirements, and were I to follow any other requirement in opposition to conscience in either, I could neither be virtuous nor pious. Not what the government imposes, but only what I myself propose, as ultimate end and aim, can give to me either righteousness or holiness.

*Unrestrained action in all things not subversive of the public freedom.* Freedom to write, print, or speak what I will, if I do not therein invade the public freedom, is mine beyond the

reach of all civil legislation. The public prosecutor must make out the invasion of the public freedom in what I have uttered to the world, and the choice going out in overt action to do so, or there is neither slander nor libel in any communication I may make public. Others are free to hear what I speak, or read what I publish, as they please, and neither myself nor they can come under any legal restraint, until the invasion of the public freedom is first established.

*To be held as innocent until legally proved to be guilty.* If the end of government has not been hindered, and thus no conflict has come in the maintaining of the public freedom, the sovereignty has no penal claim upon any citizen ; and it is the right of all to possess the immunities of the government until the charge of violation has been legally made and proved. It is the business of the government to arraign, try, and convict ; and until convicted, every citizen may claim exemption from civil penalty.

The sovereign as fully as the citizen has the right to decide for himself what cases come within his proper jurisdiction, and where he may apply his pains and penalties in constraint of the subject, and must exonerate or coerce accordingly. But the principle, as given above, which allows some original rights to the citizen beyond the reach of civil sovereignty, must be admitted by all righteous government ; and if there come any collision between the sovereign and the subject, it can only be a question of casuistry whether the particular case comes within the principle or not. In such unhappy discrepancy of original personal right and claim of governmental authority, the power of the sovereignty may for a while carry all things its own way ; but the appeal is to the ultimate standard of right which involves the judgment of posterity and of God, and at length, before this final tribunal, the assumption and oppression of the sovereign is as surely and severely rebuked as the transgression or rebellion of the subject. The subject is justified,

in all such collisions, in his resort to all legal preventions and hindrances practicable, and the sovereign judiciary should set aside all legislation which violates fundamental principles.

2. *The subject has no right to evade law.* From necessity, inasmuch as human government must be made and administered by fallible men, all political regulations must have their imperfections. The eye of the sovereign cannot detect every crime, nor his arm arrest and punish every transgressor. But this defect is only in fact, not in principle. The sovereign has his right to arraign and punish every delinquent, and if any criminal evade the law in its penalty which he has violated in precept, it has been against ethical right, and a moral vice has been thereby added to a political crime.

Wherever state authority reaches, there the majesty of sovereignty is ; and no man may be permitted to put forth any choice, which is not constrained by the law in harmony with the public choice. Just so far as this fails the organic unity is invaded, and a wound to this is as fatal in one part of the state as another. The organic unity is vital in every part, and the ægis of sovereign authority must cover the whole or ~~no~~ portion can be safe. The state itself, through all its organization of connected choices and interests, rights and claims, is eye, ear, and hand to detect and arraign every transgressor. And in every subject, through all the body-politic, there is a nerve of political sensation which carries up to the seat of sovereign authority and redress the notice of any violence anywhere suffered. All unredressed wrong-doing remains as a festering wound in the state, and creates so much disease and danger in the commonwealth. No matter how clearly and effectually the criminal may have evaded the law, he has left the virus of his crime working its mischief in the political life of his country, and the evil is no more sure in the state, than is the moral retribution in his own conscious degradation. No secrecy of wickedness, nor any successful resistance to law, has in any manner mitigated or

abolished the moral turpitude of the transgression. All evasion of revenue laws, taxes, and regulations of the right of suffrage, are breaches of morality, inasmuch as an ethical imperative sanctions every regulation of righteous authority.

3. *The criminal has no right to sympathy against law.* A righteous subject of human government may sympathize with human misery, in all cases of its manifestation. It is an indignity to his humanity to harden the heart and steel the breast against any suffering. It is worthy of any man that he compassionate human sorrow, and even all cases of sin and guilt. But while a righteous man may allow all the overflowings of constitutional sympathy for the sufferings of a criminal rightly punished, and would render himself inhuman if he looked on the anguish of another with unfeeling indifference, yet may he not permit this sympathy to magnify itself against the law, and prompt to any action that would withdraw from the full infliction of penalty, and leave the authority of law un vindicated. This morbid compassion to the guilty is by no means uncommon; but it is always a criminal weakness in the man who cannot control constitutional emotions by moral principle, and includes within it a criminal treachery to the state.

The criminal who suffers under righteous penal retribution has still all the rights of humanity, and may properly demand that his punishment shall not be inhuman in kind or degree, and that no innocent man shall look on his sufferings without a feeling heart, but he has no right to appeal to any sympathy, that he may through it secure a lighter stroke of penal justice. The good man may pity all his sorrows, and yet rejoice most righteously in the law which smites him. The criminal may righteously take the solace of the good man's sympathy, but should not wish to abate at all his loyalty to the law.

4. *The citizen can stand against all claims of the civil government, on the ground of mere legality.* Legality implies obedience to law through the constraint of its sanctions. Not

from virtuous regard to duty, from love to the sovereignty, from patriotic regard to freedom, nor from general benevolence to mankind, but solely from the good offered or the evil threatened. It is, ethically considered, a servile and mercenary spirit ; obedience from motives which give no moral virtue ; and yet the citizen can stand on this ground, and civil government can make no further exactions. His whole political life is thus justified.

• The sovereign may wish every citizen to be virtuous, patriotic, and even pious ; but he can do nothing as a sovereign to enforce any thing but overt obedience, and can never question the motive from which that obedience springs. Morality has its sanctions to answer its ends, and Religion has its means to attain its purposes ; but neither can have recourse to state authority for the sake of making men either virtuous or pious. The hand of civil authority is quite too clumsy to meddle with the human conscience, and secure action from the pure love of virtue or the holy love of God. The political sovereign, even when he has fortified his authority by the full measure of all the claims of morality and religion, and has thus made himself in the eye of the sage and the saint to stand forth as a righteous moral governor, does not rely upon moral and religious motives to secure political obedience. He is set to guard the public freedom, and constrain the execution of all individual choices in harmony with the choice of the whole, and for this purpose he promulgates the public will in his preceptive legislation, and constrains to obedience by the application of legal sanctions, and is obliged to be quite satisfied if either by hope or fear he can keep what has been committed to his care unbroken.

When, therefore, the citizen can vindicate his overt action before the tribunal of his country, and no charge can be sustained against him of any violation of public freedom, he may with a bold face stand in the presence of his political sovereign,

though at the very moment he must blush with the conviction of his baseness before his own conscience, or tremble with fearful forebodings before God. Civil government must stop at its own standard ; it sets out to conserve the public freedom by pains and penalties, and if it has secured the end by its own means, it must ask no more.

5. *The citizen may righteously expatriate himself.* That which makes any man a component element of a particular state is the fact that, in the providence of God, the rights and interests, which call forth his choices and prompt to their execution, lie commingled in the same community with others ; and the freedom of the whole, in the choices of all demands that each should be restrained for the sake of the whole. If a ship at sea should lose all its officers, or a shipwrecked crew be cast upon a desert island, this little community would then stand in the condition of a state. The whole would have the right to restrain and constrain each one for the freedom of all.

But this narrower relation must be always subject to the broader one. The organic unity which binds the whole race of men together, may as easily require the dissolution of any particular community as its formation. The one universal state, itself unchanged in its requirements or its ends through all the generations, creates and destroys individual states as its own ends determine, and when an individual person finds that the interests of the universal state demand his separation from the particular community where his lot may have been cast, that community should leave him to obey these without restriction. Generally, it will be wiser and safer to leave the determination of this question to the judgment and the conscience of the person himself, though special exigencies may occur where a given state may find it necessary, not only for its own preservation, but for the widest interests of mankind, to keep its citizens within its borders even against their will. But the ethical principle, to which also the actual practice of modern states tends

to conform, is soundly expressed in the Act of Congress,<sup>1</sup> which declares that "the act of expatriation is a natural and inherent right of all people."

If the theory of a state were that of a compact, it might be said the social contract cannot be righteously severed without an assent of both parties ; or, if it were patriarchal, it might be said that one child could not leave the paternal dwelling rightly without parental permission ; or, if it were government by divine right, it might be said by the monarch, "I am the state," and no vassal may leave without orders ; but on the true basis of state existence and legitimate political authority, though the sovereign may bind every conscience to obedience while within the jurisdiction, yet can he bind no conscience to remain there by the right of his authority alone.

6. *The merit or demerit of the citizen is determined in his relation to the sanction of the law.* Desert of legal reward is *merit*, and desert of legal penalty is *demerit*. If the law is without positive reward annexed to the precept, the consequential security and immunities guaranteed in the protection of every good government is a sufficient reward, and those are implied in the legislation itself, and this is expressed when it is said of an obedient citizen, he deserves well of the state.

Merit is used with some modification of meaning. A citizen may have come under the condemnation of the law, and subsequently do that which deserves the favor of the government, and in this point of light he has *the merit of congruity*,— it is *fitting* that he should be rewarded though he cannot make his legal demand for it. The same also applies when an innocent citizen has done some signal service to the state for which no law has offered a reward. Some heroic deed, some scientific or literary work, some useful invention, may truly merit some reward from the government, but for which the man has no

---

<sup>1</sup> July 27, 1868.

legal claim. On the other hand, when the citizen has complied with some claim of the law in which there is an express stipulation, he may then use the law itself and claim of the government his reward ; and in this point of view he has *the merit of condignity*. This may also apply to demerit, where the law claims the penalty, and we term it *condign punishment*. The first case is an instance of what is sometimes termed an *imperfect right*, while the last is a case of *perfect right*.

A citizen accused of crime, and legally arraigned, is called *an accused criminal*, but this is not yet determinative of his guilt. When he has been legally sentenced to punishment, he is called a *convicted criminal* or a *convict*. When a citizen has betrayed a pecuniary political trust, he is termed a *defaulter*; and should he be adjudged to suffer legal penalty, he too would in that case become a convict. If his trust has been some high commission, as foreign ambassador, or officer of the army or navy, and he has there sacrificed the liberties of his country, he is known as a *traitor*. A citizen who opposes by violence the direct action of the state sovereignty, whether singly or in combination, is a *rebel*. Should the rebel put himself upon the ground of original personal independence, and admit no government as a restraint upon his choices, and thus utterly disregard all the rights of public freedom, he becomes *an outlaw*. In the carrying of his choices out to execution against the rights of all citizens, he is a *robber*; and viewed as acting against the rights of all states, he is a *freebooter*. When in combination, many thus engage in practices of violence, they are known as *banditti*; and when upon the high seas they assault the flags of all nations, they are *pirates*.

A rebel may lawfully be restrained or destroyed by any citizens of the government against which he rebels ; and all forms of outlawry may be resisted and punished by any portion of the human family, since the outlaw stands against the rights of mankind.

## CHAPTER VII.

THE POSITION OF THE GOVERNMENT IN REFERENCE TO  
THE CITIZEN.

CIVIL government we have seen to be the agency whereby the state, as the organic unity of its citizens, manifests and maintains its will. This will is always righteous, and always authoritative, since it only demands that contribution of each for all, and of all for each, which the original reason in man demands ; and for this demand the all-sufficient reason is, that love, which is self-surrender, or the leaving of oneself for another, is reason. The sole end of civil government is to announce and enforce this demand of reason ; but as there may be often a difficulty in determining what is this demand, and thus a liability on the part of the government, which at the best is only an imperfect agency for the work committed to its charge, to be mistaken, it is quite desirable for us here to notice how in certain cases the position of the government in reference to the citizen is determined by the application of our general principle. It is true that this whole question is really a broad question of casuistry, and might not improperly be altogether omitted in a higher philosophical analysis. Having attained the universal principle of political ethics, we might leave the particular facts to be brought within the principle, and each one to be expounded according to the good sense and judgment of the student. But this general principle is itself so broad that to many it may seem quite vague, and thus incapable of definite application to many practical cases. Indeed, its application, in some of the higher matters of civil government, gives secondary principles still so extensive, as often to be apprehended in the light of fundamental truths of political science.

For the two-fold purpose of attaining some of these more

important political truths, in the central light of all political morality, viz. : the organic unity of all men as members of the universal state, and their organic unity, also as citizens of a particular state, and of accustoming the mind to make the application of this great ultimate principle to all cases, we shall extend this Chapter over much more ground than has been done heretofore ; and shall give, in distinct Sections within it, an investigation of the more prominent duties of the government, as specimens for determining all its legitimate functions.

The preliminary remark, comprehensive of these, and of all governmental regulations, is — *that the government can be satisfied with nothing but obedience to its laws.* An offence against law, anywhere occurring, is a wound to the organism, and this the state everywhere deprecates. The punishment of this offence is not at all what the state wishes, rather than obedience and no punishment ; but the punishment is to vindicate sovereignty that it may still subserve the organic unity. The threatening, and when the legal threat has failed, the executing, of the penalty, have but one end, — the securing the least infraction of the public good possible to be attained by authority. Not punishing because crime has been committed, as if that could satisfy and was an equivalent for the obedience demanded, but punishing that the sovereignty may be maintained, and that wrong may cease, and the obedience of the citizen leave the public freedom henceforth uninvaded. The breach already made by crime is as irremediable as the fact is unalterable ; a calamity which the government can never redress, that it should not lament its occurrence. What the sovereign wishes is perpetual and universal obedience to his law ; for in this way only can the end for which the civil authority has any right to act be attained.

In following out the consideration of the position of the government in reference to the citizen, by Sections, we will take up the topics in the order of their more intimate connection with the sustaining of the state authority, and then pass onward to

such as have a more direct and important bearing upon the interests of the community.

SECTION I. *Judicial Oaths.* The Scriptures condemn all swearing in our ordinary communications. “Again, ye have heard that it hath been said by them of old time, thou shalt not forswear thyself, but shalt perform to the Lord thy oaths. But I say to you, swear not at all: neither by heaven; for it is God’s throne: nor by the earth; for it is his footstool: neither by Jerusalem; for it is the city of the great King. Neither shalt thou swear by thy head, because thou canst not make one hair white or black. But let your communications be yea, yea; nay, nay: for whatever is more than these cometh of evil.” MATTH. V. 33 to 37. “But above all things, my brethren, swear not; neither by heaven, neither by the earth, neither by any other oath; but let your yea be yea; and your nay, nay; lest ye fall into condemnation.” JAMES, V. 12. That these prohibitions extend only to the practice of using oaths in communications between man and man, is manifest from the context, the Jewish practice, and especially the facts hereafter given.

The examples of good men and of God himself sanction solemn oaths on serious and important occasions. In the case of Paul: “For God is my witness, whom I serve with my spirit,” etc. ROM. I. 9. “Moreover, I call God for a witness upon my soul, that to spare you I have not as yet come to Corinth.” 2 COR. I. 23. “For neither at any time used we flattering words, as ye know, nor a cloak of covetousness; God is witness.” 1 THESS. II. 5. In the case of God: “I have sworn by myself, the word is gone out of my mouth in righteousness, and shall not return,” etc. ISA. XIV. 23. “For I have sworn by myself, saith the Lord, that Bozrah shall become a desolation,” etc. JER. XLIX. 13. “The Lord God hath sworn by himself, saith the Lord God of Hosts; I abhor the excellence of Jacob, and hate his palaces,” etc. AMOS, VI. 8.

The judicial oath is fully sanctioned. By the Jewish law:

"Then shall an oath of the Lord be between them both, that he hath not put his hands to his neighbor's goods," etc. Ex. xxii. 11. "Thou shalt fear the Lord thy God, and serve him, and shalt swear by his name." Deut. vi. 13. "Thou shalt fear the Lord thy God, him shalt thou serve, and to him thou shalt cleave, and swear by his name." Deut. x. 20. The Saviour's example: "And the High Priest answered and said unto him, I adjure thee by the living God, that thou tell us whether thou art the Christ, the son of God. Jesus said unto him, thou hast said." Matth. xxvi. 63. Apostolic admission and divine example: "For when God made promise to Abraham because he could swear by no greater, he swore by himself," etc. "Wherein God, willing more abundantly to show to the heirs of promise the immutability of his counsel, confirmed it by an oath," etc. Heb. vi. 13 to 17. "For those priests were made without an oath; but this with an oath, by him that said to him, the Lord swore and will not repent," etc. Heb. vii. 20, 21.

The dictate of pure morality is precisely of the like purport. It would be an indignity to humanity and a debasement of the spirit, that ordinary conversation and daily communications of man with man, by speech or writing, should be interlarded with oaths. A man's character for veracity is more secure in public estimation when his categorical declaration is all that he uses. The dignity of truth, ordinarily, needs only the simple yea or nay. But on the other hand, in extraordinary and solemn occasions, where more is depending on the declaration, and special confidence in it is demanded, there is no indignity to man in a solemn and religious appeal to God for the truth of the declaration given. It is to the honor of the human spirit that it acknowledge its dependence and responsibility before the Supreme Being, on all proper occasions, and such is precisely the nature of an oath. If the occasion on which the oath is taken be proper for such acknowledgement, religion and morality can have nothing to object to it, but would be both promoted by it.

We have here no inquiry except in reference to the judicial oath. And we remark in reference to it :

1. *The state needs its use.* As the generations of men are or have been, or as it is probable that the mass of mankind long will be, it will be found impracticable to sustain civil government without bringing in the religious considerations of dependence upon God and responsibility to him. The discarding of all future retributions leads directly to anarchy. But the defence of judicial oaths does not need that we insist upon their *necessity* for civil governments ; if by them the ends of government may be *better* promoted, this is sufficient.

In many cases, from necessity, the eye and the hand of civil sovereignty are ineffectual to detect and arrest. An appeal to an Omnipotent eye and an Omnipotent hand, in a way consistent with the faith of the state and the citizen swearing, is an immense augmentation of security for truth and confidence in the declaration ; and by just such augmentation is the public freedom the more secure. All that can so be gained to the use of the state is needful for it, and what it uses directly to the legitimate end of government, it rightly uses. Neither public morality nor religion is in any way desecrated by this, but publicly sustained and promoted. They are used by the state to purposes which both morality and religion approve. To deny the right to employ oaths, and discard their use, would fatally weaken all jurisprudence.

2. *The state is the administrator of the oath.* In whatever way the oath may be lawful between man and man on private or particular occasions, or in what way ecclesiastical judicatories may resort to the oath for confirmation, is not here inquired. In all cases where the end is the conservation of the public freedom, the state only is the rightful guardian, and the civil authority alone should administer the oath. As the state imposes the oath, so the person swearing must take the interpretation from the state authority. The oath is binding *secundum*

*animum imponentis.* No other can determine for what or when it is needed ; and as it is used in the interest of its own ends, the state must decide in what way it is to be interpreted to subserve its own purposes.

But while the state imposes, and this makes it necessary that the state should through its government be the interpreter of the oaths it administers, and may insist that the citizen swearing shall be held to its own meaning, yet is the government bound to make its oaths, as well as its laws, plain to the capacity of those on whom they are imposed. If an old form of the oath have an antiquated and obscure phraseology, and one that involved a meaning in its original enactment which could not in modern use be applied, yet inasmuch as the state is a permanent agent, and exists the same while successive legislatures come and go, its interpretation by declaratory acts, or decisions of courts, or the explanation of the judge, is to be that which the person swearing is to apprehend and bind himself to sustain. The ethical rule is, that the state, as imposing, shall give meaning to its oath, and see that this meaning is made plain to the one swearing, and that he feel bound to get and conform to the state meaning.

3. *The oath may imply a prayer for Divine help, or an imprecation of Divine vengeance.* The usual phrase, "So help you God," *ita te Deus adjuvet*, may imply conscious assumption of increased responsibility and conscious frailty under temptations and perverting influences, and thus an appeal to God to add his help to sustain the enhanced responsibility ; as, "may God so strengthen me, as in my sincerity I throw myself upon his grace." Or, it may imply, as is more commonly understood, the imprecation of Divine desertion if the man prove false ; "so God help me only as I speak the truth."

In either case it is a solemn appeal to Omnipotence and Omnipotence specially to regard the entire agency of the man in this transaction, and bringing the whole directly before God.

It excludes all levity and carelessness ; it precludes all fear or favor from man ; it renounces all pleas of interest or expediency ; and disclaims all palliations or excuses for falsehood. It secures watchfulness, careful recollection, definite statement, and considerate expression.

4. *Oaths are mainly of two kinds,—testimony or engagement.* Oaths of testimony involve careful recollection and assertion. The assumed obligation is the whole truth, no more and no less. To go beyond, and add that which exaggerates or mitigates, or in any way falsely colors ; to suppress and thus give a garbled statement of an incomplete representation ; each alike subjects to the crime of perjury.

Oaths of engagement bind to fidelity in the fulfilment of official functions and committed trusts ; and involve a careful apprehension of the duty imposed, and a scrupulous fulfilment. Sometimes a trust may have been of long standing, and passed through generations of trustees, as in the case of incorporations ; in which case the oath binds according to the intention of the instrument. If changes have occurred making such execution impossible, the permanent state, which is the regulator and imposer of all oaths, must determine the manner in which the trust shall be executed ; and this should be as nearly as it can be judged the founder would have wished, in the changed circumstances.

5. *The state may find two obstacles in imposing oaths.* Some minds may question the lawfulness of oaths on moral or religious grounds, and thus plead the right of conscience against the government of the state. This brings up the question already sufficiently settled, viz. : that each must have the right of interpretation and decision, and while the state decides to pursue its own course, the citizen can only decline violating his conscience, and leaving the case to the tribunals of his country, and taking the penal consequences if they must come.

But ordinarily a real question of conscience will have in it

so much of humility, forbearance, and discretion on one side, that it will call forth respect and regard on the other ; and some compromise will be effected, by which both private conscience and public freedom will be subserved. In this case, the scruples of the Quaker and Moravian, against taking judicial oaths, are met by the expedient of a solemn affirmation, under the like civil pains and penalties as an oath. The same safeguard to liberty is thereby attained, for the meaning of a *solemn* affirmation, to a serious mind, brings up the same reference to eternal retributions, and induces the same careful recollection and guarded statement, and the civil magistrate visits a violation with the same penalties.

At other times the state authority may meet at its tribunals, citizens who believe in no future retributions, and acknowledge the existence of no God. If the belief of God and futurity be other than the Christian, a Christian state can administer the oath according to the faith of the witness, and bring his conscience under this argumented obligation to veracity, and then leave his testimony to receive credit, proportioned to the elevation of the religious creed and the purity of its sanctions. An oath on the Koran or the eastern Shasters, should not give equal validity to the testimony as an oath on the Gospels, though each may be made subject to the same civil penalties for perjury. But when there is no faith in the being of a personal Deity, or if a God be acknowledged there is still no belief in any future retributions, the case is quite different. An oath can to such be of no possible significance, as a sanction to testimony. There is either no God to swear by, or no regard to the oath by God, if the being of a God be admitted. In all such cases the administration of an oath would be wholly impertinent.

There may be various opinions about the right course for the state in its use of such citizens, either for testimony or trust, but the principle is itself plain, *viz.* : credit, in proportion to the

sanctions upon conscience. The civil pains and penalties may be alike in each, but this cannot give equal validity to testimony. In the nature of the case, the believer in future rewards and punishments, distributed by a personal God, must feel claims to veracity and fidelity which cannot be made to reach the conscience of an atheist, or any rejector of future punishment for sins committed in this life. Yet just in proportion to the proper validity of his testimony, may that of an atheist be desirable and demanded by the state. The full fact of his religious belief is a fair matter of inquiry by the state, and his affirmation, without any oath, is to be estimated by the greater or less restraint which his religious faith would throw upon his conscience. If all religion be discarded, his availability for any political use in the state will be small indeed. Public confidence cannot be very strong in the protestations of any man who has not the guard of religious sanctions against the bias of selfish interests. The freedom of the public can have only feeble guarantees in a nation of infidels, and to the extent of the individual's destitution of religious obligation, must the state necessarily distrust his testimony.

6. *Oaths should be imposed only upon important occasions.* The oath is of no benefit to the state, except as it quickens the conscience and thus strengthens the sense of moral obligation. And it is an evidence of the public sentiment in its favor, that it comes to be used so frequently in cases of testimony and promissory engagements. The strong need of religious sanctions to veracity and fidelity is universally felt, and the tendency is to introduce them on every occasion. This too frequent imposition of oaths tends directly to the destruction of the end proposed by them. Instead of increasing general religious obligation, the oath becomes common and familiar, and really loses its hold upon the conscience. Applied to unimportant and even trivial cases, it becomes a mere civil formality, and awakens but little serious reflection and caution in the person who has re-

ceived it. Such effects are not to be chargeable to the imposing of oaths by the state, as if necessary to the fact, but are the consequences only of an improper administration of oaths.

The principle of using an oath only where its religious solemnity will quicken the conscience in its sense of obligation, is the only one that can be given, and this must direct in the particular cases according to the soundest judgment. The state destroys its own means of securing its ultimate ends, if it uses the oath so frequently and so lightly as to weaken its religious obligation upon the public conscience.

SECTION II. *Property.* Some articles of property may be transferred from place to place, used and consumed, and which may thus be considered as merely appendages to the person, as his dress or his instruments of labor, and these are known as *moveable or personal property*.

Again there are other kinds of property which are immoveable and cannot be made mere personal appendages, and which from their permanency are property by special eminence, and such property is termed *real estate*. This is land and that which is permanently attached thereto, as buildings and improvements.

One kind of property may be exchanged for another, and this induces some standard of value, which may be a fair representative of the personal labor that the particular commodity has cost. This standard is *money*, and has its own value from the amount of labor or difficulty with which it is attained, and is selected from other things for such use from its scarcity, imperishability, and easy divisibility. Usually gold and silver are taken for this purpose, which are hence called the *precious metals*, while for small values, copper and nickel are used. The coining affixes an authoritative stamp, by which is certified both the purity and gravity of the particular piece ; and in this way different coins are made subservient to all the transfers of property in buying and selling. By the use of money there is effected in one transfer, with the greatest convenience, all the

exchanges of the most complicated trade in barter. The money, as bullion and as coinage, has an intrinsic value, and this is always inversely as the quantity which is thrown into circulation.

The right to property lies in a man's right to the products of his own labor. What a man produces is ethically his, and thus whatever he may make by his own powers is his property by a natural right. To the doer belongs his deed. Irrespective of all civil legislation, a man might thus attain the natural right to personal property, and so far as he could mingle his own products with the soil, he would, by cultivating the earth and building upon it, attain a natural right to real estate. A community of such persons, as a state, would ethically be required in the civil legislation to regard such rights of property as truly as all other personal rights, but its legislation should accord with the following principles :

1. *The state must have the sovereign control of all property.* It can never be right for a person to find profit in a labor which inures to the harm of another. Neither, in the long run, can this be possible. The organic unity which binds men in a fellowship of reciprocal interdependence, does not permit the welfare of any one to be gained except through the welfare of every one. If one member of an organism suffers, all the members suffer with it, or if any member be honored, all the members rejoice together. Thus the natural right by which a man holds his property as the product of his own labor is never absolute. No rights of property can become inalienable, like the right to religion, reputation, conscience, etc., and thus all rights of property come under state control. The state alone must determine in each case what the property of each citizen should be. All right to property is thus in a social community resolved into a state right. No man can call any property his own, except as he holds it under the law of the country where it is.

2. *The state must in all cases be considered as the supreme*

*proprietor of the soil of the nation.* Since the subsistence of man is from the soil, the very existence of the community might be imperilled, if the supreme ownership of the soil were vested elsewhere than in the community itself. The territory of a state must therefore belong first of all to the state itself. This accords also with the historical fact. The original ownership of the soil was held by the community and not by the individual members thereof. These have derived their titles to their lands only from the state, and each citizen as proprietor still holds his land only under the supreme title of the state.

3. *The state must regulate all transfers and descent of property.* As it is not right for any man to hold property for his own ends irrespective of the ends of others, as any man's right to his property is subordinate to the right of all men to be served thereby,—a man's property being bound by the law of the organism as truly as the man himself,—so all contracts, bargains, bequests, deeds of sale and trust deeds, and all devises, wills, and descent of intestate property, must be subject to the control of state authority. There is no way of making property contribute to the welfare of the community as truly as to the wealth of the individual who holds it, unless the state has the right to determine, between the holder and his contemporaries, what power of transfer he shall have; and also between the holder and coming generations, what control his acts shall have upon the world that shall be after him. Inasmuch as no one generation can foresee what will be the need of all coming generations, so no one generation can have the right to control all property for all coming generations, and no one man can have the right to say what shall be the perpetual descent, management, and use of his own estate. The state lives on in posterity, and that must determine how far the living generation may throw its choices down upon others. For the one great end of all its generations, must the permanent state sovereignty regulate and settle all transfers and descent of property, and bind righteously all the consciences of its citizens accordingly.

4. *The state must also regulate the right of property which the man may have in his own published thoughts.* If anything by natural right is a man's own property, such must the product of his own thinking be. But the man not only has a right in the product of his own intellect, the public have also their right in it. Every man is bound in the community to which he belongs, and the state authority exists and acts legitimately only for this very thing, to see that no man shall live for his own ends, but as a means for the ends of all. The product of his mind is not therefore all his own.

The truth he has discovered, the facts he has observed, or the forces in nature which he has combined for new ends, were not created by him, but were in being before his invention. He found them, and had he overlooked them they might have been found by some other student. The right of discovery is thus ethically a limited right in the nature of the case. Unless other reasons intervene, it would not be just that the discoverer and his heirs should have the endless monopoly of the things invented. The public has its rights in them from their original and independent being, separate from the consideration of who first discovered them. In the case, also, of such products as are the direct creations of genius, and which could have been brought out by none but their author, the principle also still applies to this as to all property, that nothing is so much a man's own that it must not be held by the state subservient to its own ends. The civilization of humanity is higher than any individual, secular, or pecuniary interest, and the state must have the right to determine and use all means that may subserve the ends for which its authority is holden.

But the government should always be careful to recognize that the rights of the state and the rights of its individual citizens can never be in conflict, and that the good of all requires a certain use and ownership of his products by him who has produced them. The author and the inventor, like every

laborer, has his rights which the state requires its government to maintain. No person may appropriate the products of another's thinking and observing to his pecuniary profit, nor may the government come in and control them or give them over to the public, without full acknowledgement of the author's right, and compensation for it. While the state controls all property and possessions, it could not interfere with any possession, and alienate it to the public use without a full equivalent, since this would be to make one part of its organic body a means without being at the same time the end of all the rest.

On such grounds the state for the public's sake may rightly say just how far the author's copy-right or the inventor's patent-right shall last, and then the public shall own what once was his. Yet is there a strong tendency towards too little discrimination, and too summary and arbitrary action in all regulations of copy-right and patents. The interest of the public in appropriating all new inventions and discoveries for its benefit, and the ready combination of the many against the few, make it incumbent upon the government to guard with special care the interests and rights of the discoverer. Civilization cannot avail itself of new truths and inventions until they are attained and brought out, and it is the duty of the government to strongly encourage all scientific and artistic thinking. It will as effectually retard social progress to discourage thought and invention, as to give to inventors a monopoly of their products against the public. The laws must regulate all property, but they must be scrupulously exact between private and public rights, and while the principles are plain between the author of new discoveries and the people, the facts are often very partially and with great difficulty subjected to them.

5. *The government may never on its own account use any property as a monopoly.* The government can have no ends of its own welfare in distinction from the welfare of its subjects. It only exists for the sake of its subjects, and can therefore

never come in as a distinct corporation, and for itself on its own account engage in business, and make exchanges of property, with other corporations and individuals. Whenever, in order to furnish itself with the means for its maintenance and enforcement, the government is obliged to come into the market, and buy and sell in competition with its own citizens, it is ever to restrain itself by the principle of its own right to exist, viz. : the owning nothing, and transacting no business, except as the direct agent of the state in subserving the organic unity of its citizens.

Nothing can be more odious than that the strong arm of the government should be thrusting itself into the movements of exchange and mercantile business, monopolizing by its wider grasp the production or sale of merchantable commodities, and rejoicing as a separate self in the gains it is making from its own citizens. If the government have soldiers, or prisoners of war, or criminals imprisoned, whom it would employ in some branches of productive labor for their own support, this should always be regulated by the principle so to employ them that the whole commonwealth may be benefited, and not that the government as an independent corporation may be making money of its own particular subjects. If the government have public lands which it must bring into the market, it must regulate the sale, not by the profits it can make out of the people as a monopoly, but by such a disposition of them as shall best subserve the organic unity of the people. The government has no right to do any thing but with its single eye to this.

*SECTION III. Taxes and Imposts.* We have already noticed that the individual person has no inalienable right except that to his own righteousness. His labor, his property, his liberty, his life, are not inalienably his. He may forfeit them by his own act, or the state may require them for its own needs, in which case the individual yields them justly to the state. The state may demand everything that belongs to a man, except

his manhood and his moral integrity, which he has no right ever to surrender.

The truth of this is revealed in the true theory of the state. As the organic unity of its citizens, the state requires from each whatever each can render towards the well-being of all. But in this well-being of all is the only true good of each, and the actual requirement which the state makes is therefore not a burden but a blessing. All the enjoyment which a man can receive from his property comes from his connection with society. Cut off from all social relations, a man's wealth would be worthless to him. In fact there could be no such thing as wealth without society. Wealth is what may be exchanged, and requires for its very existence a community of persons with reciprocal wants. Gold and silver to any amount is not wealth till it is put into the hands of some member of society, and becomes a means wherewith he can serve others, and receive some service from them in return. But not only are the enjoyment and even the existence of wealth wholly a social creation ; not only would they cease entirely if men were only individuals, living each one alone or apart from others ; but in like manner all social progress gives an increasing value to wealth, and a man's possessions grow in worth as he grows in the intimacy and perhaps also in the intricacy of his relations to his kind. It is wise and right, therefore, for society to exact its due proportion of these its products. Such exaction is taxation, respecting which the following principles appear :

1. *Taxation should be relatively proportioned to the ability of those on whom it is laid.* As the demands of the state are made only upon persons, taxation is, strictly speaking, laid upon persons and not upon property ; but it is generally laid upon persons in proportion to their property, because their property may generally be supposed to measure their ability to render this particular service which the state requires. This is not always the case, for we have capitation or poll-taxes levied irrespective

of property, or we have taxes levied upon a person in view of his occupation or profession. But the occupation or profession is rated according to the ability which it gives the person to pay the tax, and the poll-tax — which is usually small — is put upon the ground that every person has some ability to give labor or its equivalent products to the state. The easiest, simplest, and, on the whole, the most equitable taxation is that which is proportioned to the person's income on whom it is laid.

2. *Taxation should only be levied under due process of law.* The person taxed is an end as well as a means in the organic unity which embraces him, and the taxation laid upon him is as much to be measured by what is due to him as by what the whole body requires. Such a measurement is not easy. It requires the greatest wisdom to adjust and apportion taxes so that each and all shall be duly benefited thereby. Human selfishness in a matter of this sort is peculiarly liable to resist the demands of the organic unity, and human short-sightedness is just as liable to fail in seeing what these demands are. A government therefore needs to proceed with the greatest caution here. It should avoid, of course, in this as in all matters, whatever is fitful or arbitrary, and its entire procedure in the assessment and collection of its taxes should be clear and open to every inspection of the person taxed. He should not be liable to any sudden surprises ; he should not be singled out with any disproportionate requirement ; he should know just what is expected of him, and when, and why ; and all this requires that the whole method of taxation should not only be carefully considered by the government, but should proceed upon definitely-stated laws. A person's ability to pay taxes is in part proportioned to the clearness and precision with which the laws respecting taxation are stated and followed.

3. *The government can rightfully have no interest of its own in taxation contrary to the interests of its subjects.* Civil government is not for its own sake, but for the sake of its subjects.

Its taxation is not to benefit itself, but to give it the means of benefiting them. Taxation to enrich the government, or to aggrandize any one person or class at the expense of another, is unrighteous exaction and tyranny.

SECTION IV. *Representation.* The government may make no arbitrary requirements ; it should have no will of its own, but should express only the universal will of the state. But this universal will not only holds in its mandate every person belonging to the state, it also finds itself represented in every such person ; he is a person only as in him is seen the light and heard the voice of this universal will ; he is a free person only as he obeys this will, and he is a citizen only as he is first a person to whom this will assigns his place with other persons in the organic unity of the state. The government is thus as properly the representative of its subjects as it is the representative of the state which is mirrored in them, and should therefore readily yield to them as their privilege, what they also might properly claim as their right to have some direction by their own suffrages in its administration. Suffrage is in one sense a privilege which the government confers, but it is as truly a right which a free citizen might claim.

SECTION V. *Religion.* There has never been a nation without some sort of religion, nor a civil government which religious influences have not to a greater or less degree moulded. If among any human family or tribe some observers have failed to detect any religious faith, this has only been among the wildest and rudest of the race, who are as destitute of nationality or any thing like an organized government as of religion. As an historical fact, nations and governments and religions have everywhere a connection, not only most intimate, but which has thus far shown itself indissoluble.

If we look more closely into this historical fact, we find that the controlling element in their connection has ever been the religious one. Nations and governments have not formed their

religion, but their religion has formed them. It is only by their religion that they are ever brought into the relations of a national life. If we should suppose that such relations could originate in men's love of ease, or fear of danger, or instinct of self-preservation, such a supposition ceases when we remember that these sentiments are just as strong among savages where there is no nationality as among the best governed nations. Neither is the lust of conquest, nor the love of gain, nor interest in art or letters or social refinement ever the source of national life, for all these pre-suppose the nation already started, and are only found after its origin has been through some other means secured. Common descent will not make a nation of savages, neither will any common interest create or preserve a government. A nation finds its unifying bond, and a government its vivifying power, only in religion. Religion is not the flower, nor the fruit, but it is the living seed and root of all national and political growth. Any prominent changes in the history of any people or government are always found, when closely scanned, to originate in prior changes of religion.

Nor is this historical fact without a clearly obvious reason. The principle of authority which governments express has neither stability nor power save as it expresses and rests upon an ultimate Divine authority. The finite will can only find its regulative sovereignty in the Absolute Will, and people are restless, and civil governments groundless, unless held by what, in the last issue, is regarded as a Divine command. God's absolute sovereignty is recognized by the human reason, and reverenced by the human will, even where the understandings and actions of men theoretically deny or practically discard it.

It is not only true, therefore, that civil governments always have had, they also always must have, some connection with religion. To attempt to separate these two would be as unreasonable, as to succeed in such an attempt would be impossible. We only need to note the fact of this connection, and

then inquire into the attitude which political morality requires a civil government to take towards its religion.

1. *Civil government should use religion as a means and not as an end.* To the individual religion is an end. He may not use it as a means to any thing farther than itself, for there is nothing farther which he can attain, or which he can even wish to attain. Religion is a union with God ; and when this is found there is perfect joy and perfect life, beyond which there can be nothing better to be sought or gained. But this would have no significance for civil government. Civil government uses religion as a means to the farther end which the government itself is designed to subserve. The government is the mouthpiece of the state. It exists solely to express the organic unity of its subjects. All its machinery, its laws, its functionaries, as well as its own existence, have no other justification or end than as means to educate and perfect the citizens of a state into the knowledge and enjoyment of their organic unity. A government makes use of its religion for just this purpose. A people wholly irreligious could not be governed, and a government therefore seeks to extend the influences of its religion not at all for the sake of the religion, but only that it may thereby be aided in the better government of its people. Religion itself is not an end of civil government, but only a means whereby the government finds itself able to go forward and fulfil its mission.

2. *Civil Government should leave the largest liberty to the individual conscience in religion.* The religion of no one of its citizens can be indifferent to the state. Holding its citizens as it does in the unity of an organism, the religion which will most favor such a unity is of course the most favorable to the state. The wisest government, therefore, will most clearly see and most confidently rest upon the religion which most successfully actualizes the conception of a brotherhood among men, and will desire that all its subjects shall be actuated

thereby. But a wise government also sees that no outside appliance like its own can ever secure the adoption of any religion by a single individual. Religion has no meaning to the individual, it becomes to him something quite other than religion, unless he adopts it as an end; but an end can be adopted by no person nor power for another. It must be self-adopted, if adopted at all; and while a government may wisely make provision for instructing its people in the religion which it can best use as a means, it will also wisely leave them free to choose the religion which commends itself best to them as an end. Constraint of such a choice would be impossible and absurd, and a wise government will not attempt it.

This does not of course imply that civil government should tolerate any and every religious practice. Religious practices may be as hostile as any other to the organic unity, and if a man's religion leads him to a conduct subversive of the public good, this conduct is not to be tolerated because we leave his conscience free.

SECTION VI. *Education.* It is agreed on all hands that the intelligence of its citizens is a matter of prime importance to every state. Civil government, therefore, will have much to do in reference to the education of its subjects.

1. *It should establish and regulate a general system of education.* Strictly speaking there can be no such thing as a self-education. No person ever makes any improvement in wisdom or knowledge without some help from another. It marks the truly organic connection and interdependence in human life that neither the birth nor the growth of the mind is any more possible than is that of the body through its own agency alone. And this which is true of every individual of a community is just as true of the community as a whole. No community ever educates itself without outside aid. History gives us no instance of an unenlightened people rising by its own spontaneous and self-directed efforts to an enlightened life. The

efforts are always first kindled and then directed by some agency from without. All upward impulses come first from above.

Moreover it is a fact, however striking or strange, that neither a person nor a people having begun a course of education, or having carried it forward to any degree, can be safely left to continue it unaided. However we may explain the fact, the fact remains, that human nature has always shown an inherent tendency to throw away its privileges, and can never be trusted to maintain them.

The education of its citizens, therefore, so important to the state, cannot safely be left to the citizens themselves. The government of the state must superintend and control this. However advanced in intelligence a people may be, their advancing education will continually need governmental supervision and control. This governmental supervision is actually exercised in the greatest degree where the people are themselves the most intelligent ; their intelligence, instead of relieving the government from the necessity of continuing its charge of their education, only making this necessity all the more apparent. The best educated communities on the globe are those where governmental direction in matters of education is most constant and careful.

*2. This governmental regulation will include the higher as well as the lower schools.* As a matter of fact the higher schools do not grow out of the lower, and do not rest upon these ; but the higher school is, in actual occurrence, first, and the lower one is not its precursor, but its product. There is no law of evolution by which the common school grows up into the college, for, as an historical fact, the college is first and gives birth to the common school. It is not by the lower education of the many that we come to have the higher education of the few, but the exact converse of this is the universal rule. The education of the many is always dependent upon the education of the few.

It is no unseemly favoritism, therefore, when the govern-

ment levies upon all an educational tax for the support of schools which only a few can attend.

3. *Civil government should make adequate provision for the religious instruction of its subjects.* The course of education anywhere will have its direction and character ultimately determined by the religious life there prevailing. A religious quickening always precedes and gives birth to the intellectual quickening of any people, and where the religious impulse grows weak, the intellectual impulse also begins to decline. It is quite as important, therefore, for a government to attend to the basis upon which all its educational structure must rest, as to attend to the building of the structure itself.

But there is a deeper reason. The virtue of its subjects is far more important to any government than their intelligence. No amount of intelligence ever saved any people, and the most costly educational system may be pregnant with peril. A people may be very intelligent, and yet very corrupt; and wherever this is found, there is a disease which is surely fatal unless abated. A government maintains itself in permanent power, not by the intelligence nor by the wealth or the number of its subjects, nor by any extent of territory over which it rules, but only by the virtue which reigns in its subjects' hearts. But the virtue of any people will never rise higher than their religious faith requires. Virtue is the fruit of religion, and religion is its only root. Religious instruction is therefore necessary to the moral well-being of any people. Without it, any people is morally dead.

If it be said that other agencies than those of civil government may be safely left to furnish this instruction, the same claim might just as well be made in reference to any kind of instruction. But we have already noted that however well educated a people may be, they do not need any the less, but in fact do receive all the more governmental supervision and control in their educational affairs; and in like manner, whatever

the number of religious organizations, or whatever the degree of religious culture anywhere found, both history and human nature warrant the statement that for a government to be indifferent to the religious instruction of its people, is the first step to a corresponding indifference on the part of the people themselves.

If it be said, as it often is, that religious instruction must impart the tenets of some particular faith, and that when civil government undertakes to do this, some other faith of its subjects is liable to be outraged, this is undoubtedly true ; but if the government is to be kept from religious instruction for this reason, it might be prevented, for the same reason, from ever going to war, from all levies of taxes for the support of its army or navy, from all police regulations, and indeed from punishment of every sort ; for there are many people, honest and intelligent, too, who have religious scruples against war, and are religiously opposed to all its agencies ; and there are many, also, whose honesty we need not question, who plead their conscientious objections against all maintenance of law and order by force or by penalty. No wise government will ever treat lightly the religious scruples or conscientious convictions of any of its subjects ; neither will a wise government yield to these when they set themselves against any course which it has adopted for the public good. To do so would be to abdicate its authority, and acknowledge that it had no right to be.

A government may of course make mistakes — as has frequently been done — respecting the religion which it teaches. It would be a very great mistake for it to teach any other religion than that which should best promote the organic unity of its subjects. But when such a mistake is made, its evils are to be rectified precisely like those of any other governmental mistake, not by denying to the government its authority, or its right of judgment, but by bringing to bear upon it whatever light that may reveal its error, and whatever power that may change its course.

The real difficulty in this whole question comes from confounding two things radically different. With civil government religion is a means, with the individual conscience it is an end ; when, therefore, these two come in conflict, we need not ask which should yield to the other, for each should triumph on its own ground. This distinction clearly apprehended, and the principle at its base followed, would equally preserve civil government from religious indifference or religious persecution.

SECTION VII. *Internal improvement.* The question with us here is not one of political economy, but of political morality. Many things may hinder the expediency of a particular measure of internal improvement, when on its own ground its morality might be unquestionable. Having established the right of a government to make internal improvements, the expediency of doing it in any particular case is then an open question to be settled by the circumstances.

1. *The government may have a broad field for legitimately carrying forward a system of internal improvements.* There are many works of national benefit too heavy for private capital to sustain ; many where the national benefit would be great, though the pecuniary income would not reward, and thus would not enlist private enterprise ; many where the income would be so remote in time, that a generation might pass away before private capital would be brought to it ; and thus an eye watchful for the public good might find much for the government to do for the sake of its subjects, where private interest and enterprise would find nothing to invite their attention.

2. *The government has not the right to carry out its internal improvements in a course of partiality.* One of the strongest objections to internal improvements on the part of the government, is the partiality it encounters. Scarcely can any one improvement be of universal equal benefit, and by as much as it helps one part and not the other, it is the dishonest principle of taxing the many for the benefit of the few. But this sweep-

ing objection proves far too much. The navy and the army, the forts and arsenals, in fine, all public works and institutions, and even the sessions of the legislature itself, may give their benefits in quite unequal degrees to different portions of the country. The objection is available thus far, that the carrying out of the system must not be in a way of favoritism, nor in a manner that shall operate unequally and thus partially. If one measure favor one portion, an equal benefit should be secured to other portions by other measures. If a break-water be made in one place, a harbor may be improved, a river cleared, a ship-canal dug, etc., in other places. The system, as such, must be made to operate impartially.

3. *The government should not prosecute internal improvements, as a monopoly, in competition with any of its subjects.* Here is another source of objections to all systems of internal improvements, that it at once introduces a government monopoly, and overpowers or excludes all private competition. To this, in its broad extent, it may again be answered that it proves too much. The same thing would exclude all possible mercantile business transactions by the government. But it is a valid objection to this extent, that the government shall not interpose its action to the hindrance and discouragement of private enterprise. We have already seen how odious must be all government monopolies, which rejoice themselves against the prosperity of the citizen. The system of internal improvement must not crush, nor supplant and exclude, private enterprize. A government canal should not tax a private railroad, nor a government river-improvement tax a private canal, for the sake of monopolizing the transport.

SECTION VIII. *Commerce.* Every state will have productions in one portion that must be consumed in another portion, and thus necessarily an internal trade must spring up and extend itself in any community. So also every state will need to exchange its productions with other states, or to buy theirs and

sell its own, and thus foreign commerce must more or less spring up in all nations. Peculiarity of production, and extent of navigable rivers, and amount of sea-coast or facilities for international land transport, will modify the nature and amount of commerce, but all states will be called to attend more or less to the operations of internal trade or foreign commerce.

1. *The authority of the state must be applied to the regulation of commerce.* The conflicting choices of interested tradesmen will interfere with individual right and the public good in a thousand ways, if left to execute themselves in the internal business and exchange of the country in their own manner. In many respects, trade may be left free not only from protective duties, but free from all state legislation, and the mutual interests of buyer and seller will regulate their commercial negotiations. But this is by no means universal. The nature of the case, and especially the self-interest of the parties, will present many instances, where the choices will not reciprocate, but where collisions will be engendered. And this is especially so, where the mutual interests of a common country are excluded in foreign commerce. And such collisions with the citizens of foreign states would at once provoke reprisals, private violence, and national war.

No other agency can be brought in to regulate these mercantile transactions, but the state sovereignty; and in all cases where public freedom is concerned, the state has a valid right to interpose its authority, and bind the action and conscience of its citizens. What else might be wholly indifferent, when made a legal commercial enactment, is henceforth a moral obligation upon every citizen.

2. *The question of revenue, or protection to certain productions, is quite distinct from "the regulations of commerce."* A revenue may be raised otherwise than by duties on importations, and certain products can be encouraged and protected otherwise than by taxing the foreign article. To regulate commerce

is, in its real meaning, to so control it that the collisions of interest therein excited shall be suppressed and guarded from disturbing the common freedom. Revenue and protection may be made collateral with this, and the commerce may be so regulated that they shall be incidental to it ; and commerce may also be regulated in various ways, with no regard to either revenue or protection. That a state may regulate commerce is not therefore a ground of inference, that it may do something else wholly distinct from it. The question of the right to raise revenue, or protect certain products, should be put upon the right of a state, from the very existence of its sovereignty, to do all that the end of the state demands, and not as an inference from some other right.

SECTION IX. *Postal arrangements.* The post-office department has long been one of the prominent matters of government arrangement in civilized nations. It has doubtless been deemed to be, and to a great extent doubtless has been, a necessary part of the public interest for the government to control. It stands, however, on the same principle as all other matters which come under the state authority. If private choices cannot here be executed in their free operation without trenching upon the freedom of the whole, then should they be controlled by the government ; and if the regulation of the whole postal system be necessary to the efficient operation of every part, then has the government a right to assume the whole, and exclude all private competition, and determine the way and means of the entire correspondence of the country, by its own sovereign enactment.

SECTION X. *Prohibitory laws.* Individual choices may demand complete prohibition in many cases, on account of their contradiction to the public freedom, and in all such cases the government has the right to enact and enforce prohibitory laws. The very end of state sovereignty is to guard the public freedom against all particular encroachment, and if it has a right *to be*,

and to do any thing, its right to restrain any thing which infringes upon the public freedom is manifest. The plea of any man that he has a right to use his own as he will, is wholly impertinent. Nothing is a man's own in such a sense that he may thereby violate the organic unity in which he is bound to other men. His very life is forfeited, when his action puts the state in jeopardy.

In all such cases, where individual passion or interest induces some to disregard the public rights of man, and invade the freedom of the commonwealth by putting in jeopardy the property, the morals, the health, or lives of others, by any occupation, manufacture, or traffic, the state authority is righteously exerted in effectually putting a stop to the whole business. This may apply to houses of assignation and ill-fame, gaming establishments, immoral speech or publications, manufacture and traffic in hurtful drugs and ardent spirits, and the practice of carrying concealed arms, or any thing else by which the public peace is endangered.

*i. The practice of government licenses in such cases is immoral.* License to some men and prohibition of others, in the same thing, must be on the ground that a promiscuous engagement in that thing would be a public injury, while a regulated engagement would be safe. Such cases may be, where particular knowledge and skill are requisite to public safety, as in the case of licensed pilots, physicians, etc.; or where municipal regulations are necessary for general control, as in the case of licensed porters, hackmen, and public carriers. Free competition may often regulate all such matters, but where the public need such protection, the license is righteous.

But the government itself becomes a party to the immorality, in licensing any to do that which at all times, and in all modes, violates the public freedom. It deserts its trust in permitting the public peace to be invaded, and adds to this delinquency the positive vice of taking wages for public injuries.

*2. The government has the righteous control of both parties.*

If the manufacturer be dangerous, and the user of the product also ; if the seller and the buyer both contribute to the public disturbance, they are both alike within the sovereign authority to be restrained or prohibited. It is thus no apology for the one to plead that he forces no individual ; he traffics only with the willing ; they both force an injury upon the public, and wound the freedom of the state, and it is the duty of the government to restrain the hurtful choices of them both.

*3. It is righteous to make the hurtful products not only contraband but a forfeit.* Where the article is itself pernicious, it should have no protection from law. If in some uses only it can be salutary, and in all others pernicious, the government may righteously protect it as property in the one use, and make it contraband or forfeit in the other. It may often be the most expedient measure to preserve the public freedom by a regulated destruction of the pernicious product, and in all such ways of protection the government has a righteous authority. It may restrain the business by pains and penalties against those who engage in it, or by officially destroying the injurious article.*4. Governmental interference is righteous only in cases of real injury to freedom.* As in all cases, so here, civil government may cease to be the conservator of public liberty and become the tyrant. It may prohibit the traffic in that which really is not pernicious, but highly salutary. The Bible itself is prohibited in many Christian countries. There may, thus, often be much tyranny in prohibitory laws, and the individual duty of obedience or disobedience is found only in a conscientious regulation of the action by the higher law, and taking the consequences.

SECTION XI. *Sumptuary, sanitary, and poor laws.* Under certain stages of social advancement, it may be necessary that civil government should regulate private expenses in food, dress, equipage, and dwellings. But this must be for a rude and

ignorant people, whose uncultivated habits and almost savage manners demand the stimulant of stringent laws to start them on the course of improvement ; or, for a weak and effeminate community, which needs the hand of power to check their prodigality and luxury. Sumptuary laws can hardly be demanded among an intelligent and virtuous population.

There may be much more occasion for sanitary regulations, inasmuch as the mass even of an ordinarily intelligent community may be very liable to neglect measures necessary for the healing of the sick, and preventing the spread of disease. Laws for cleansing, draining, and ventilating towns and cities, regulating the licenses of physicians, apothecaries, and surgeons, establishing public hospitals and quarantine regulations, are called for, and for the present, at least, seem indispensable in the most intelligent communities.

The poor will be in every age of every nation. Misfortune, sickness, and vice will multiply the creatures of want in every community. The hand of private charity may not often be liberal enough for a supply. Public choice would have the poor relieved, but individual choice may not effect it ; hence the interests of public freedom demand the interference of state authority to this end. It is thus probable that state-pauper regulations will be long demanded in all nations.

The highest civilization determines what should be the public choice, and thus what public freedom demands, and this the state authority should strive to execute. Its sovereignty is legitimately applied to such an end.

*i. The government should make timely and adequate provisions for the poor.* That government has been unrighteously negligent, which has not made provision for meeting effectually all cases of extreme want that may arise. Sudden calamities may bring wants beyond present supplies, but the general arrangement should be constant for calling in supplies for sudden emergencies and unusual distress.

2. *The government should leave all encouragement open to private charities.* The public choice would not hinder but encourage the application of private alms, and all voluntary acts of benevolence. It would only make up for the poor what is lacking from individual benefactions. State laws, in any way discouraging private charity, would be both immoral and irreligious. The poor-rate is not instead of charity, but a supply for the deficiencies of charity.

3. *The government should so legislate for the poor as to discourage idleness and vice.* The idle should be made industrious, and the vicious externally obedient to wholesome laws, as the condition of receiving help. Distinctions may righteously be made in the amount of comforts supplied for the poor, in a way that shall promote virtue and industry; and when the capability of self-support returns, the public assistance should be withdrawn. Injudicious poor-laws may often become the greatest promoters of poverty and idleness, and thus an oppressive perpetuation of the evils they should have relieved.

SECTION XII. *Weights and measures, currency and interest.* There is no natural standard of weights and measures which may be applied to universal use. The pressure from gravity is not uniform over the surface of the earth, and there is no absolute representative of extension and capacity. Exchanges and sale of products by weight and measure are so convenient in society, that some general standard becomes a necessity, and civil government only can regulate and establish such standards of weights and measures as shall become universally known and authorized. There must be the specific material instruments which give a determined weight or measure, and to these must all such as are of public use be brought and compared, and then officially sealed as approved by the state authority. The government has the right to demand of all its subjects that they regulate their commercial transactions by the use of its own approved weights and measures.

There is no more any standard of absolute value, than above of weights and measures. The amount of labor which any product may have cost cannot be such a standard, for labor itself can only be estimated by its comparative products. The amount of business-transfer demands a given amount of coinage-value, and an accumulation of coinage beyond the business of any place cheapens its value in that place, and secures its exportation to places of greater scarcity. The relative value of the precious metals to other products, added to the value accruing in the coinage, must determine the amount of circulating currency necessary for the facility of transfers ; and other things being equal, the scarcity of the metal, unless to an extreme degree, is the more favorable, inasmuch as thus the greatest values are transferred with the least bulk and weight. Authority determines, by its coinage, what precious metals it will make into money ; and this, as a legal tender, is the ultimate legal means for cancelling all indebtedness.

The introduction of a paper currency is by promissory notes, obligating to so much specie-payment, which notes stand thus as the representative and voucher of so much coin-money ; and such banking privilege must be regulated by the authority of the state, and the amount of bank-stock and bank-circulation be controlled by its legislation according to the commercial wants of the community. This paper circulation may not, however, be put as the substitute for the current coin, but only as a voucher for so much of it as is indicated on the face of the note, and may not, therefore, become an ultimate standard of value and a legal tender in liquidating debts. A forced paper currency, by legal enactment, substitutes a mere voucher of money for the money itself, and thus attempts to force the shadow to effect the same results as the substance, thereby cheating the public choice by giving it an empty name in the place of the promised thing, and thus civil government becomes a traitor to the freedom it is appointed to guard. A nation too

poor to get credit except through immoralities is already beyond self-redemption and recovery.

The inquiry whether morality permits the government to regulate interest for money, is two-fold, viz.: Is any interest for the use of money right? and if it is, may the government interfere and establish usury laws? The difficulty with the first question is found mainly in the determination of the representative-character of money. If it be only a representative of value, and not at all possessing any intrinsic value, why should it be itself taxed, or made to command a price for its use, as if its use had a real value? The products which it represents have their value, and they are rightfully taxed; but why should their mere representative be again taxed, when it is of no value in its own use? It is paying for the substance, and then paying over again for it in its shadow. All the products of a country are all its real wealth, and all the money of the country is only a representative of the real value, and yet we are doubling the profit by striving to use the property of the country twice over,—once in the products and then again in the money which only represents these products.

But this perplexity, originating in a false principle, is removed by removing the fallacy which occasions it. It is not true that money is a mere representative and has no intrinsic value. It has in itself intrinsic useful properties as money, and is thus an addition to the wealth of a country in all its other valuable products. We take first such products as are the necessities of life, the materials for the food, clothing, and shelter of the inhabitants, and their intrinsic value is in their direct subserviency to the necessities of mankind. But even such essential products cannot subserve man's necessities, except in their distribution. The grain in one portion of a country cannot feed those in other portions, except as distributed to them. The means of conveyance are as necessary as the food to be conveyed. The ships and canals and railroads and freight-trains cannot be eaten,

and yet the food cannot any more be eaten without them. And thus with all the implements and utensils for raising grain, and all the mills and machinery for preparing the grain to be eaten, they become as necessary as the grain, and in this connection have as truly an intrinsic value. They are all products which have a valuable property, and all go to make the wealth of a nation. The accumulation of such products, beyond the demand made for them in the grain to be raised and distributed, would be valueless ; and in this sense they are the representatives of the grain of a country ; but up to the demand the grain makes for them, in its being grown, distributed, and manufactured, they are not mere representatives, but necessary products of intrinsic value for mankind, and enter directly into the capital of the country.

Even so with the money of a nation. Attempt to bring together all these means for raising and distributing grain, without so much money as shall give facility to the transfer, and the intrinsic value of money will be made apparent. If all exchanges in building ships, canals, railroads, etc., must be made through the repeated bartering of one heavy product for another, the means for an extensive distribution of grain, and so also of any other necessary of life, would be wholly unattainable. The money which facilitates such distribution is itself as real property as the farming implements or the wagons and freight-trains by which the grain is transported to the consumer. It is as morally right that it should be taxed, or that it should receive an interest for its use, as any other product of value.

The answer to the second inquiry is direct from the very end of the government. If the practice of loaning money is regulated as naturally in the commercial operations of society, as that of building, using and selling ships, railroad cars, etc., then there will be no need of usury laws forbidding more than certain rates of interest. But if the possession of money give the opportunity for taking an advantage of the necessities of a busi-

ness man, and thus capital be found to oppress labor, as probably in its unhindered action it often will, then is it the right and the duty of the government to interpose its authority and its penalties for the defence of the oppressed laborer. The government is bound, however, to so apply its usury laws, and all legislation for defence against extortion, as not to aggravate the evil it would cure, by making loans more difficult and more burdensome in the end to be effected by the laborer. A law may often aggravate the very grievance it proposes to cure.

SECTION XIII. *Revolution.* The state is distinct from its government. The forms of government may change ; dynasties rise and pass away ; official administrators be forcibly displaced for others ; but the one organic state continues through all these changes. Revolutions, thus, take place in government, not in the state. A state may be subjugated, annexed, annihilated, but not revolutionized. When we speak of a revolution, we are to understand a sudden and violent change in the point of sovereign authority. Reforms may change, more or less suddenly, important portions of the government and its administrative functions, but it is not a revolution except as the entire place of sovereign authority turns over.

1. *Revolutions are justifiable when the public freedom demands them.* Reforms may be demanded in the same government, from the changes in the people and their circumstances, in order that the public choice may be more fully executed ; and in all such cases the reform is righteous, and thus a true and not a misnamed reform. But changes may also become so great in a people or their circumstances, that no possible reform in the government can reach the demand of public freedom ; but there must be a complete revolution of the sovereignty in the government itself. When this is truly demanded by the end of all government, then for liberty's sake a revolution is as righteous as in the above case was the reform. That government which cannot subserve the ends of public freedom to the greatest

practicable degree ethically should give way to one that can ; and if it selfishly resists, it should be put out by force.

But in the estimation of the public freedom, the evil to it in the violence of the revolution itself must be included, as truly as that which accrues from the present perversion and oppression of sovereignty. If the evil to freedom is greater from the violence necessary to change the sovereignty, than that in its present perversion, the time has not yet come for revolution. There is oppression which lies as an immorality at the door of the government, but this cannot justify a greater oppression from any one in correcting or expelling it.

2. *It is the state only which has the right to revolutionize.* The only real authority for political government is the state. Sovereignty is righteously of the state, and if it has become wrongly placed, the state only has the right to determine when and how to turn it over, and to what point. A Brutus may be as truly a tyrant as a Cæsar, if he be not executing the manifested choice of the state. It is not any individual, nor any combination of individuals, who can righteously revolutionize their government ; if the nation does not go with them, they are rebels in their attempts at subversion.

A portion of a state, a colony, may be oppressed by the other portion, or the parent country, and seek to revolutionize in its own independence ; and the same ethical principles apply. That portion, which is to become a state by revolution, has in it the right of independent sovereignty morally, if its cause be just ; and it, not any individual or combination of persons, has the right to revolutionize.

3. *Individuals, or combinations of persons, begin the work of revolutionary agitation at their peril.* The state only has the right to revolutionize, but the state in its whole social community cannot be expected at once to arouse itself, and in the primary assemblies of the people assert its grievances, arrange its manner of action against the tyranny, and go forth orderly

and unitedly to put out the perverse sovereign and put in its own. This would be the righteous method of revolution were it practicable.

But some watchful patriots see and feel the oppression sooner than others. They arouse others to sympathize with them ; the agitation commences,—within the forms of law very probably,—and then passes on to the more direct attacks upon the government. The only righteous course for the true patriot, who aims to revolutionize his government, is thus to call out the state to the expression and execution of its own sovereign authority. It is not for him nor his associates to assume the sovereignty, to dethrone that which is, and put up another ; it is only to awake the state to do it. And in attempting this work, they should all know distinctly the position they assume. To them, the cause may be good ; the call may be the real cry of the public freedom ; but if the state does not awake, and act, and take this work into her own hands, then verily they may not usurp it. And they attempt to so arouse the state at their own peril. They assume the responsibility of the first step ; and if the state awake and throw off her oppressors, she will probably hail them as the saviours of her liberty ; or if she does not put forth her sovereignty and make the political revolution, she will probably act through her already existing government, and hang them on the gibbet. Another alternative may still be, that what was taken as the state does awake and struggle manfully against the powers that be, but that the existing sovereignty is found too strong and crushes all before it, and both the assumed state and her heroes go down together. Thus it is that in revolutions the successful agitator is the saviour of his country, and the successless one, a rebel. He takes the responsibility of the issue, and posterity, the tribunal of ultimate ethical equity, will determine whether he conquered or died as a patriot.

4. *Those that resist a revolution take their position also at their peril.* It may prove that the sovereign whom they upheld

will be cloven down by the state, and all his defenders with him. They may act sincerely in sustaining the attacked government, but they may be made to die with it. Thus in times of revolution all is peril, and all heads sit loosely on their shoulders. The foundations of civil law and order are shaken, and we are made to feel how fearful is a time of anarchy.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

### THE POSITION OF A STATE IN REFERENCE TO OTHERS.

THE boundaries of nations are fixed by many contingent circumstances. Distinctions of race, colonial origin, conquest, or arbitrary conventional regulation, may have determined the people and the extent of country which shall be embraced by one state, and thus the lines of its political jurisdiction. Many state sovereignties are in this way cotemporary and some co-terminous with each other. It is a natural consequence that nations must have more or less intercourse, and it is important to apprehend the principles in moral science which must control all international connection and communion.

1. *The sovereignty of each state is independent.* The progress of events in the ongoing of history, and not the application of ethical principles, determines the distinct identity of nations. We have, thus, no occasion for applying moral science to the origin of nations and the determination of particular sovereignties, but only to such sovereignties as already exist together.

But where we find an existing state, occupying a given territory, and inclusive of a specific population, and thereby separating itself from all other communities in the responsibility of guarding its own rights and conserving its own freedom, it

should possess complete and independent sovereignty. Its progress in civilization is to be directed by its own choice, and its constraint of individual choices is to be determined by this public choice ; and thus in the preservation of its own freedom, it must exclude all interference and discard all higher political authority than its own. It is not a question of numbers, but of independent jurisdiction ; and thus complete sovereignty knows no great or small but only independent state existence, and then its authority is as legitimate and supreme in a state of small as of large population. Sovereignty is a unit and complete in itself, and any extension or diminution of its area does not alter its nature. Its power to execute may be in different degrees, but its right is absolute in its own jurisdiction and not a thing of degrees. Any interference from another state in its own prerogatives must be resented as the highest insult, and resisted to the last extremity.

One nation may be partially conquered by another, and made tributary to it, but so far as this is the case, it ceases to be a state ; its liberty is cloven down ; its sovereignty has departed ; and its citizens must look to the state sovereignty which has subjugated it for the protection of the public freedom. The sovereignties have become adjunct, or rather the one has been absorbed in the other. So long as the particular community has its standing as a state among other nations, its sovereignty is independent and absolute.

States may exist as separate from each other in a Republic, but they are no longer sovereign states amid the nations ; the true state, as such in its national identity, is in the one republican sovereignty.

2. *International regulations must thus rest upon the basis of pure morality.* It may be an ethical claim, in the right of universal freedom, that nations shall be restrained in their intercourse with each other by some well-understood and mutually-admitted regulations. National consent, by long precedent and

practice, has given validity to many such regulations, and which, as combined in written treatises, are known as *the Law of Nations*.

But no political authority exists which can throw its restraint over independent sovereignties. This code of national law emanates from no sovereign legislative, and can be administered by no political executive, and is thus no law as based upon positive authority. It stands only as an appeal to the public conscience of mankind ; that which is ethically due from one nation to another in national community ; and holds thus all to the claims of each in the right of pure morality. The precept can only appeal to that which is the highest worthiness of a nation,—in the best sense, to the national honour ; and while its end is the conservation of the liberties of nations, as national law is for the conservation of public liberty in a state, yet can it bring in no sanction of pains and penalties ; no judicial tribunal nor executive administration ; nothing which can be termed positive authority, that holds to obedience simply because it is enacted. The only origin, and the only sanction, is the public conscience. There will come the self-degradation of the state which violates it ; and the public abhorrence, moral contempt, and indignant condemnation, of all people towards it ; but if there be not a violation of sovereignty, and an invasion of the liberty of independent states, there is no way for the other nations to inflict positive punishment for it. Jehovah only is the sovereign arbiter of nations, and to him vengeance belongeth ; other nations may conscientiously condemn and abhor, but they have no jurisdiction authoritatively to arraign, convict, and punish.

With this end of universal freedom in view, and the appeal only to the public conscience of mankind to attain it, we may apply the principle in various ways, and determine what is the righteous position of one nation to another in many particulars. As in the last Chapter, so here, we will put the particulars under different sections, and give some of the more important as examples for all.

SECTION I. *Comity of Nations.* States stand to each other in many ways as persons, and thus reciprocal respect and courteous treatment should be manifested among nations. The methods of manifesting this national civility are various, but long habit and precedent have settled many customs which are now demanded in the intercourse of states by the comity of nations, and a disregard of such customs would be derogatory to the civilization of the state which carelessly permitted it, or a mark of disrespect and an insult to the nation to whom it should designedly be exhibited.

Some of the methods of manifesting such national respect and courtesy are the customary salutations of the national flag; the honor given to all accredited ministers, ambassadors, and plenipotentiaries, in their persons and the communications they may make; the usual forms of diplomatic intercourse and etiquette of courts; and in the admission of the citizens of other countries to travel or reside among them on equal conditions. Special marks of honor may also be given by special national salutes, the participation in the signals given of national rejoicing or mourning, and in public attention and honors paid to the officers or statesmen who may be present from another nation.

Such acts of courtesy and comity are demanded by morality among friendly nations, not only as they conciliate mutual good will and strengthen the bonds of peace, but from the same reason that respect is due from one person to another. Nations are composed of persons, and a state itself in its sovereignty may be said to have a personal character, and the intrinsic dignity and excellency of moral personality ethically demands tokens of respect and appropriate regard from all other persons. It is as truly a disgrace and degradation to a state to disregard these claims to national respect and honor, as it would be to an individual to treat his fellows insolently and contemptuously. The common sense of the world would mark such disrespect with disapprobation, and the nation offending against the claims

of general comity would lose much in its character and influence among all civilized people.

SECTION II. *Treaties.* Various reasons in the intercourse of nations demand specific treaties, which are of the nature of national contracts between one state and another. If the claims of political ethics be apprehended in the light of the organic connection which binds all members of the human family together, and which as truly determines the relations of states as of individuals, the general principles which should regulate all treaties between states would be easily found and applied, though doubtless strongly condemning the frequent license taken in national negotiations. Selfishness and all dishonesty between nations is as truly an immorality and as highly derogatory to the moral character of the offending party, as the like iniquity between individuals. The Rule of right is as strict and peremptory in its imperatives upon states as upon persons. These treaties may refer to commercial interests, boundary questions, fisheries, colonial intercourse, articles of peace, and indeed in reference to any mutual interests between different states.

1. *Each state is sovereign, and has equal rights as party in the treaty.* The stronger nation has no ethical prerogative over the weaker, but must come into the negotiation as an equal, fully admitting all the rights of sovereignty in the entire transaction. If one state has been beaten in war, weakened and crippled by the army and navy of the other, so long as there is not complete subjugation and thus the merging of one sovereignty in the other, there is no right in the victorious nation to take advantage of the weakness of its adversary, and impose hard and oppressive conditions of future peace and amity. Power no more gives right in a nation than in an individual, and the dishonesty is the more dastardly which takes advantage of weakness to wrong and oppress.

2. *No treaty stipulations may involve any immoralities*

Whatever is against pure morality or the higher law of religion is precluded ethically from all treaty stipulations. No matter how apparently advantageous or expedient to one or to both of the parties, the claims of morality or of a higher authority cannot righteously be violated by either party. The treaty is ethically a nullity so far as it includes unrighteousness.

3. *Each party must have the right to withdraw from a treaty of indefinite time, by giving suitable notice to the other.* National sovereignties are permanent, and in process of time the treaty which has been mutually beneficial may become onerous and unjust to one party. Equity demanded that at first one nation should not wrong or oppress the other, and the same imperative is constant. If the circumstances, therefore, have so changed that the perpetuation of the treaty stipulation is injurious, that party has the right to withdraw from it without censure. This should not be done suddenly and arbitrarily, but comity demands that it should be officially asked by the one, and equity demands that it should be granted by the other.

If a time is stipulated for the treaty to run, such advantage cannot be taken; for the fixing of the time manifests that both parties agreed to run the hazard of all changes until its expiration, and thus have given up the claim which the changes of circumstances would else have made equitable. If, however, this lead to great oppression and injury, the benefited party should not take the advantage.

4. *A treaty has all the force of a law.* The treaty is a stipulation and agreement between two or more independent nations, and is, therefore, binding in national honor and morality upon all the parties. Each nation, thus, is bound to see that all its subjects respect and fulfil the express terms of the treaty, and without any further legislation, the ratification and promulgation of the treaty becomes the law of the land in each nation included by it. It has been for the freedom of each that the treaty has been made and ratified, and the citizens of each are

as much bound by it, as by any positive legislation of their respective governments. There is even added to the authority upon its own citizens, the claims of honor and good faith towards the other national party in the treaty, and hence a treaty may be termed *the highest* law of the land.

SECTION III. *Alliance.* There may be occasion for two or more states to combine in the prosecution of a national object, and thus each attain by the co-operation of all what would else be unattainable by either. Thus there may be alliances in prosecuting discoveries ; in carrying on any hazardous enterprise ; in resistance to a common enemy ; and which may sometimes lead to a mutual agreement, that the enemies or the friends of each shall be so considered and treated by both, and hence made an alliance both offensive and defensive. The contract ratifying the alliance may sometimes be called a treaty, but we have above confined the application of treaties to such contracts only as include no combination of powers. The treaty of alliance is rather a league, and includes the idea of mutual assistance. This may sometimes be very extensive and almost universal among civilized nations, as in the suppression of piracy or the slave-trade.

The same principles apply here as in the case of all treaties or contracts.

SECTION IV. *Confederation.* This applies more especially to the league which may be formed by several smaller states, for mutual convenience and safety. Internal jealousies and difficulties in separate administrations, or external dangers, may induce a number of neighboring smaller states to band together for their common advantage. The representatives of each state, meeting in a council or congress, deliberate and decide on matters of common interest, and their acts have all the weight which the wisdom of the congress, and the moral influence of the combined public sentiment that they represent may give to them, within the sphere contemplated in the articles of confederation.

*1. Such a congress can exercise none of the prerogatives of sovereignty.* Each state still maintains its own independent sovereignty, and is responsible for the public freedom of its own citizens ; and the congress of delegates representing them has nothing of sovereign authority over all or either. They cannot properly legislate, and their acts are only advisory and recom-mendatory measures, depending for their general observance upon the interest which all feel in the confederation, and the weight of moral character which it embodies. They can neither levy taxes nor execute any laws, but all acts of sovereignty are confined to each state within its own jurisdiction ; and any one may at pleasure withdraw from the confederation, or refuse to carry out the resolves of the congress, and there is no authority to call to an account or to compel co-operation.

*2. An army and navy for the common defence may be en-trusted to it.* The congress has no sovereign authority to raise an army and support it, but it may apportion the proper amount of men and military supplies to each state ; and when the states have made their particular levies, they may commit the whole to the more effective management and use of the congress. According to the articles of agreement, the congress may appoint general officers, direct the campaign, and call their own officers to account ; and any thing may be committed to it not inconsistent with the preservation of sovereignty in each state.

*3. If articles of war or peace are concluded by the confedera-tion, there must be the sovereign assent of each state.* The congress may be the agent of the confederated states in appointing plenipotentiaries for negotiation and conclusion of treaties, but the full power of these ambassadors is derived from the common consent of the state sovereignties, and the treaties formed are ratified by their authority, and not that this congress has any sovereign jurisdiction, or is other than an accredited agent of each of these distinct sovereignties.

The congress may, perhaps, in cases of urgent interest, sometimes exceed the articles of agreement and presume a tacit consent of the states; but it is on the same ground that under special exigencies any agent may transcend his instructions, subject to the subsequent approval or rejection of the principal. They should in all critical cases consult the supposed intentions of the states, but no case of their unauthorized responsibility can bind the states.

SECTION V. *Republic.* A number of distinct independent states may, for their common benefit, go much further than in forming an alliance or a confederation, even to the bringing of themselves into one nation so far as all international intercourse is concerned, and giving to this national government all the powers of their individual sovereignty under a constitution, and this constitution thus forms them all into one Republic, which has as complete and undivided sovereignty in its sphere as that of any single sovereignty among the nations. The republic becomes the sovereign nation, and acts legitimately as a sovereign among nations; and within the constitution has no more responsibility to its own states than to any foreign state. What is not given for national purposes may not be assumed, but lies still in the authority of the several states for the adjustment and management of their own internal concerns, but what has been given into the hands of the general government for the conservation of public freedom, that it uses and applies in an uncontrolled and independent sovereignty. The entire states stand in one republic, and that becomes a single and independent nation, and has henceforth its own right to be and to act according to the terms of its constitution.

1. *States have the right to form such a republic.* The freedom of the citizens of each state may be seen to be thus best sustained, and thus each state is fulfilling its own duty to its citizens in providing for the public freedom, by the institution of a sovereignty which will more completely effect this than it could

in the exercise of its own single authority. Its citizens have the right to the highest practicable measures of public freedom, and it would itself be defeating the end of its own being, if it held on to its own state sovereignty when that end could be best attained in the sovereignty of a constitutional republic. A republic thus stands upon a sound ethical basis, when the public freedom of each state is better conserved by its own defined sovereignty, than it would be if those sovereign powers were still left in the states.

*2. A power of sovereignty lies in the Republic to enforce its constitutional authority against either or all of the states.* The republic does not, like a confederation, stand upon the mere moral force of public sentiment as expressed in the league, but it has sovereign authority to raise armies, collect taxes, and enforce its constitutional laws against any opposition from its own members. If it can control sufficient force, from the well affected towards it, to subject to its laws any combination from one or many states, it has the righteous authority so to do, and thus to vindicate and defend its own rights of sovereignty.

*3. It must confine the exercise of authority within a strict construction of the constitution.* What the states have given to a republic, they must have fully expressed in the articles which constitute it. The very nature of the work, where many states give up their own sovereignty to constitute a republican sovereignty, determines that there will be clearness and explicitness in stating what is granted, and thus advantage is not to be taken of remote inferences, implications, and deductions. What has been granted, it is the right of the general government to use; but that only has been granted which is plainly expressed, or is quite necessary to carry out the expressed provisions of the constitution. Beyond this the republic has no authority. Any other than a strict construction leads directly to oppression.

*4. Each state must by its own vote adopt the constitution.*

No matter how great a share, in the deliberations and conclusions of the body forming the constitution, any state by its delegation may have had, that imposes no obligation upon the state, until the adoption of the constitution by its own sovereign choice. Its sovereignty cannot be rightfully taken from it, and transferred to a republic, but by its own free act.

5. *When the assent is once given, and the sovereign republic constituted, no state has then the right of secession or nullification except by a strict construction of the constitution itself.* A national sovereignty is thus constituted, and the public freedom is entrusted to it, to the extent of the constitutional provision, and a common interest is created which no separate part has a right to disregard. If there is no express article regulating nullification or secession, then is there no right in any to either ; for the adoption of the constitution creates the republican sovereignty indefinitely, and its right to exist perpetually and forever, for the public freedom of all, is good and valid against any of its component states. A constitution with, and one without the rights of nullification or secession, are two very different things ; and if the right is not plainly expressed, then does it not exist, and those who have adopted it have vested rights under it which no separate state can amend or disregard. The public freedom, to the extent of the constitutional provision, is henceforth committed to the sovereignty of the republic as fully and irreversibly as the entire public freedom is in any independent nation, and the crime of treason attaches to all armed resistance to it, as in the rebellion of any part of any nation.

6. *Each state is completely and independently sovereign, within its own jurisdiction, in all things not granted in the general constitution.* The different states in a republic do not stand in the same position as the different cities and towns in a state. If these cities and towns have incorporated rights and municipal prerogatives, they hold them from their own state authority,

and have in themselves no independent sovereignty. But the separate states were *originally* sovereign, and instead of holding their authority from the republic, they have themselves constituted the republic by putting away their own authority into it.

What is granted to the republic has now become an independent sovereignty, as its own ; but what is not granted is still in the hands of each state, and exercised by it at its own pleasure, and upon its own responsibility. No sister state has any right to interfere in the internal regulations of another, any more than among independent nations ; nor is one state any more responsible for what another does, than in the case of wholly foreign states.

**SECTION VI. *War.*** Every sovereign state is responsible for the public freedom of its members, and if this is invaded by the disobedience or rebellion of its citizens, it has the right to execute the penalty of the law disobeyed, and to crush the rebellion or any part by an armed force. The freedom of the whole, and for all generations, is of more consequence than the lives of a part in any generation. The freedom of the state must then be maintained by it, even to the death of opposers if necessary.

But sometimes the freedom of the state may be menaced from without, and the force of the state may be called into requisition against a foreign enemy to its liberty ; the action then becomes war, and the morality of it needs to be determined.

1. *War is righteous in defence of the national freedom.* The life of no assailant of a nation's freedom is too sacred to be cloven down in its defence. The state is responsible for the end of its being, as a sovereign, to the full extent of all its resources. Against a foreign enemy, it cannot maintain its rights by law ; it can only resist his violence to the public freedom by arms, and such resistance is defensive war. There can be no question of weaker and stronger, for the weaker nation like the

weaker man, when driven to fight for life, must resist and defend as it may. It has no alternative but to go down if it must, struggling for its liberties. The guilt is on the offender, the war of defence is as righteous as the penal execution of law.

2. *War is justifiable only as the ultima ratio.* It is an extreme alternative, terrible and horrible at the best, and to be resorted to only in the last extremity. All countervailing measures should be first tried. War will itself, necessarily, more or less abridge the freedom of the state, and such an abridgement of freedom must not be incurred lightly. Commercial restrictions, and the application of other uncomfortable regulations, complaint of grievances, protests, and negotiation should all be tried before war, if there is any rational hope of preventing this last resort, and only when war *must* come is it right to let it come.

3. *In all war there must be guilt, at least with one nation.* Two nations can so live together, and maintain the freedom of their subjects, as not to make it necessary that one should encroach upon the liberties of another. That nation whose action makes it necessary for another to fight in defence of its freedom, is guilty of an immorality; and if the other nation stand only on the defensive, the whole guilt is with the former state. Both *may* have guilt, one of them *must* have.

4. *The necessity for war may all be removed by national comity and equity.* If there were no violation of national rights, and thus encroachment upon national freedom, there would be no occasion for war. Wars and fightings come from unlawful lusts. Any influences which shall make the nations of the earth regard courtesy and equity will exclude all wars. And so long as insult and injustice prevail among the nations of mankind, the occasions of war will remain. Each nation must stand its own defender, and unrighteous encroachment must be resisted, and may force to resistance unto blood. But elevation in national character diminishes the occasions for national con-

tention. Complete civilization, which is the perfection of humanity in intelligence and virtue, will abolish all provocation, and thus all resort to war.

5. *Much might be done in prevention of war, at the present day, by stipulated arbitration.* In the body of some important international treaty, or by a separate treaty for the specific purpose, nations might mutually stipulate, that in case of disagreements and disputes the matter shall be deferred to some friendly arbitration. An umpire may readily be found who shall be impartial, and the prosecution of the claims of each before such a mutually-constituted tribunal would in most cases remove the bloody interference of the sword. Even when war has done its desolating work, negotiation must be resorted to for the ends of peace, and if the reference can be made to an arbiter in which each party has confidence beforehand, the horrors of war may be wholly averted. The honor of each nation is preserved, for the previous agreement establishes this mode of settlement ; the peculiar principles of each government remain untouched, for unless a war of political propagandism be determined upon, such principles do not engender national conflicts ; and even the very use of such arbitration diffuses its civilizing influence over the parties and the umpire. The modern movement towards such an arrangement is eminently hopeful.

SECTION VII. *Congress of Nations.* Nations stand to each other separate and independent. As in the case of unprotected individual persons, the weaker is liable to be oppressed and injured by the stronger ; on this account it has been an inquiry whether there might not be instituted some general council or congress of nations which should stand as an umpire between sovereign states, and hold the balance of sovereign powers with so much wisdom and steadiness as to preserve the peace and liberty of the world. It may be worth the consideration, to show what political ethics would determine about the morality of such an arrangement.

*1. Such a congress of nations could have no force beyond the particular states represented in it.* Whatever were urged as the motive to nations to be represented in the proposed congress, each sovereign state would be at full liberty to accede to such a proposition, or to reject it. As each state is sovereign in itself, and at full liberty to refuse any such representation, so no meeting of any council by any number of the representatives of nations could at all affect the sovereignty of the nation not represented. It would be as much its right to reject all its resolutions, as to reject the offer of a representation there. Nothing done in the congress could have any binding force beyond those states there represented.

*2. Such a congress could not righteously be invested with sovereignty.* Whatever expediency there may be found in the combining of the sovereignty of several small states into one sovereign constitutional republic, it will not be found to conduce to the universal freedom of man, that all the sovereign states of the world should be combined in one universal republic of nations. Such is the limit of human faculties, that a universal administration of a government, which should make it its end to conserve the public freedom of all mankind, would embrace so many and so profound matters of inquiry and execution, that no human political wisdom and skill would be adequate to it. A division into sectional interests and geographical localities would be necessary, and no human sovereignty controlling the whole would be competent to secure the highest freedom.

But much more from the moral frailty of man would there be an incompetency. The temptations to ambition and lust of power would here be presented on so large a scale, that the danger of universal tyranny would be far greater than the rational hope of universal liberty. A universal republic would probably give less freedom to the race of man, than a distribution of monarchy through all the separate states. Any universal

sovereignty, monarchical or republican, would be found incompetent to control all individual choices to the highest freedom of the choices of all. The very end of civil government would therefore righteously preclude the establishment of any universal sovereignty.

But if this congress of nations be desirable at all, it is in the same sense desirable that it embrace all. Whatever benefit it may be hoped to possess can be extended only to those represented in it ; but that it may embrace all, it must not be an all-embracing sovereignty, as this would more endanger than protect the freedom of the human race. Such a congress, thus, may not *govern* the nations.

3. *The congress could be only the agent of a confederation.* Acting for the best interests of those sovereign states represented in it, and made their agent for the transaction of any common business regularly entrusted to it, it might serve the purposes of the confederation with no prejudice to their individual sovereignty, and perhaps with much favor to their common freedom. According to the interest and confidence of the nations represented in it, as an efficient agent for their purpose, and the wisdom and impartiality of its deliberations and resolves would be its success. Different and opposing interests might be adjusted ; national alienations and antipathies precluded ; common interests promoted ; war prevented ; and thus, in various ways, the freedom of these confederated nations would be subserved. Morality would find nothing in such a measure to condemn in principle, and if in practice it were found to work well, morality would enforce its adoption. It might, without ethical objection, be made an oecumenical political council.

## SECOND DIVISION.

---

### DIVINE GOVERNMENT.

---

#### CHAPTER I.

##### GOD'S BEING AND COMMUNION WITH MAN.

WE here assume the existence of a personal Deity. The proof for the being and perfections of God belongs to Natural Theology ; and though the foregoing portions of our system of Moral Philosophy are conclusive in their obligations upon an Atheist, yet if the researches of Natural Theology find an existing personal Deity, our system of Moral Philosophy cannot here terminate. We have to settle the moral questions connected with the communion between such a personal God and the race of mankind.

We take, then, the valid proofs of Natural Theology, that there is a personal Deity of absolute perfections, and proceed to the investigation of the moral questions thus presented.

This God made us and all things. He perpetually upholds and supplies all being. We know him imperfectly, but still really, and in many things adequately, to all the ends of our moral and religious being ; and he knows us thoroughly, not only our wants, but the thoughts and intents of our hearts. And our *first* inquiry is for *the manner of communion* between God and mankind.

This cannot be the communion of *equals with equals*. The perfections of the Deity raise him above nature, and thus make

him to be supernatural not only, but also above all creatures that are themselves rational and personal, and thus make him to be contemplated as completely superhuman. Equality of communion, as between man and his fellows, is impossible. There can be no society in which God and man come together on the ground of common sympathies, wants, rights, and obligations.

Nor is it the communion of *parent and child*. In some respects an analogy may hold between the parental relation, and that of God to his creatures. But the analogon is in few points, and in these to an inadequate degree. The child, by a process of development, may become equal to the parent; but no growth of the human brings it any nearer to an equality with the divine.

The communion can in no other way be expressed than as the *absolute and the dependent*. God receives nothing from man, and gives all to man. Whatever God is, he is in himself independent and underived; whatever man is, he derives from God and depends upon him to continue. "In him he lives and moves and has his being." The philosophical modes, by which the absolute can come into any form of communication with his creatures, are here no topic of consideration; but the communion in any way must still leave the Deity to be conceived as absolute spirit, existing in complete personal perfection within himself,—THE I AM THAT I AM; and man, as created finite spirit, having proper personality, but derived, dependent, and accountable.

This communion of the absolute and the dependent will also involve the relation of *sovereign and subject*. Inasmuch as there is moral personality in each, there must be a moral communion; and the perfections of the Deity permit him to stand in no other relationship to man than that of his rightful sovereign. God's attributes and man's faculties involve the ethical behest of authority on the one side, and of subjection on the other. It

would be unworthy of God that he should stand to man in any other attitude than that of sovereignty, and unworthy of man that he should come before God, even in the most endeared communion, but as his subject, "with reverence and Godly fear."

Such communion as sovereign and subject introduces a peculiar moral government. There must be some form of legislation and executive administration. But it must in many things differ from all civil polity. A Being of absolute sovereignty, legislating and executing in his own right, will give to us a polity of wholly another *kind* than that of civil legislation, and which we distinguish as a Second Division of Positive Authority, under the head of *Divine Government*.

These positive commandments from God must constitute man's religious duties, and religion has very generally been considered as belonging to wholly a different field from morality. If the moralist determine only such duties as belong to man, considered merely in his humanity, then is it left to the divine to determine what duties God has positively enjoined. The fields of morality and divinity are thus quite distinct.

But we have contemplated Moral Philosophy, not as if teaching any particular duties, but as systematizing the ethical principles which lie at the foundation of all duties. We have not taken at all the province of the casuist, and determined what facts come under the principles, and thus settled particular cases of conscience ; we have taken Moral Philosophy as the science of principles only, and thus have been solicitous in attaining a complete system of ethical principles, which all casuists may apply. In this, which is the true field of morality as a science, we have the same occasion for examining the Divine authority that we had for the civil sovereignty. We want to know what is the valid ground of the Divine Government, as truly as that which gives obligation to Civil Government ; and in both we would leave the particular facts, which

may sometimes be difficult to settle whether they come within the principles, to the casuist, be he either jurist or preacher. We are seeking, not whether such a thing is commanded, but the righteousness by which any commands may be given ; and in this point of view morality covers all authority, the Divine as truly as the human. We want the test of a valid religion, as truly as of a valid civil polity ; and to know how to determine between a true religious worship and life, and superstitious devotion and practice, as really as between the obedience of patriotism and the servitude of tyranny. Wherein is the Christian religion ethically more valid than Mohammedanism or Paganism? The Moral Philosophy is for the determination of this valid authority ; not what are the particular duties enjoined by it.

---

## CHAPTER II.

### THE END OF THE DIVINE LEGISLATION.

THE valid ground of God's government we have already apprehended in his intrinsic perfections. Such a being as God possesses sovereign authority over his creatures in his own absolute right.

But the process of the Divine administration must be directed towards that end which is to be consummated by it ; and thus, based upon the intrinsic validity of the Divine Authority, the equity of God's government in its administration can be determined only in full view of the end at which it aims. We have then, as a first inquiry, preliminary to all examination of the *process* of God's administration of a moral government, to determine the *end* which it behooves God to seek, in all his legislation and administration of a moral government. In the

distinct attainment of its specific end, we shall be able to avoid many errors, absurdities, and sometimes very serious sceptical difficulties, that have much troubled others.

1. *We cannot determine the specific end in legislation, as we do God's ultimate end in creation.* We contemplate God in his absolute being, and then the only moving spring to the going forth of creating energy must be found in himself. As infinite excellence, his own intrinsic worthiness must have ethically determined what, and in what manner, to create. He should so act in creating as to be worthy of his own accepting, and this must determine all the work of creation.

This will still be *ultimate* end in the consummation of all his works, yet as distinct and *particular* end, his legislation must come in to subserve some excellency, and attain some benefit, in *the created system itself*. It must be to meet some exigency induced by creation, and have a particular reference to the constitution and nature of that which has been created. Not like creation itself, springing at once into being from the inner ethical behest, that so it must be to be worthy of God ; but creation having taken place, so it must be governed to meet the specific wants in its own constitution. We cannot stand with only the absolute God in our contemplation, and find the end in his own inherent dignity ; but we must stand with the creation itself in our eye, and find the specific end in its wants.

2. *The Divine legislation must have its end in the capacities of man's religious being.* As a spiritual being, man has capacities for higher communings than any which human society offers. As a creature, in his own constitutional being, there is the necessary conviction of helplessness and dependence. He neither originated, nor can he perpetuate, his own being. He finds himself the creature of many wants, that from himself there is no capacity to supply. With all his intellectual activity, he still finds himself ignorant in many particulars of the highest practical importance, and which nothing short of a revelation

from heaven can remove. He has spiritual susceptibilities to reverence, gratitude, and love, above all that any presented human excellence can awaken, and is truly a being fitted for religious worship and service ; and he can never rest satisfied until he apprehends a Deity whom he may confidingly praise and adore. There is a deep want, even in the purest created nature, for some revealed source of all excellence and dignity in whom the spirit may trust, and before whom it may bow in homage and religious devotion. The deepest want in the human soul is a divinely appointed and authorized method of appearing before God, and in confiding love and trust pouring out the whole religious being in adoration, and receiving the pledges of the Divine approbation and favor. Man may have wherewithal to satisfy every other want of his being, but in the absence of this, his soul will be wretched and his spirit desolate.

And now it is precisely in this interest that the Divine government is instituted. Man's religious being is the source of all the need of God's legislation for him, and the end to which the entire administration of his government over him is directed. In some way the Divine administration must be made to reach and include all that pertains to man's religious communion with God, and direct the entire outgoings of his soul in humble dependence and confiding worship. Man must commune with his God, not as a social or political personality, but wholly in a religious capacity. He wants no legislation from God as a merely ethical or political sovereign, but solely as an adorable Lord and Saviour, to be loved and worshipped while his authority is revered and obeyed.

The end of the Divine legislation, thus, is the highest piety of its subjects. Piety is the outgoing of man's religious being to God in sacred communion, devotion, and worship. It includes and controls all the susceptibility to divine love, gratitude, and reverence. Every feeling and affection which can be awakened in communion with God, and employed in his ser-

vice, needs its direction according to his will, that it may thus be the highest and purest piety ; and to this end all God's legislation and administration will be directed. Man's highest excellency as a religious being will be directly and specifically sought in the Divine government, and the entire administration turned to the one end of fitting him the most perfectly for Heaven, which is God's final home and reward for consummated piety.

That this must be so is proved in the very necessities of the case. It is ethically demanded that it should so be, and nothing else can satisfy morality. Man has such a religious capacity, and God only can legislate for it. The whole must come under responsibility to law, and be subjected to a discipline that is held in positive authority, and which can never be attained in pure morality, nor mere legality, but solely in a government which holds in complete loyalty, and induces obedience from pure love to the sovereign.

Piety cannot be attained under the discipline of pure morality, nor can it any the more be cultivated in mere legality. The sole constraint in piety is complete loyalty,—the love of the Lord that is served and worshipped. Co-action from any source but love will exclude all genuine piety. Piety may look to the recompence of reward ; but no reward will be worth any thing in its sight except solely as the token of its Lord's approbation. There may be the exercise of Godly fear : but it is a fear that is awakened in love, and which dreads more than death its Lord's displeasure. The whole moving influence in piety is love to God, and all the constraint of law upon it is solely regard for the will of the Sovereign Lawgiver. All piety is gladness and joy ; for it obeys out of love to the Master and his service.

Man perishingly needs such a discipline ; and no being but God can legislate in such a way as to effect it. It behooves him thus, as sovereign, to take the throne, and legislate and

administer a government in the sole end of piety, and to raise man to the highest attainable religious service and worship, through the pure influence of a Divine love and loyalty.

As under the First Division of Authority, we found the end of human legislation to be *the highest freedom*; so now, under this Second Division, we find the end of the Divine legislation to be *the highest piety*. But an administration directed to the ends of highest piety may go out in its process in two directions, according to the moral characters of its subjects. There may be an administration over completely righteous beings, and all its process may be to the end of cultivating and preserving their piety. Such may be termed *an administration of justice*. Or, there may be an administration over these same beings when they have become sinners designed to restore to piety, and to receive to the Divine favor without prejudice to the piety of such as had not sinned. Such may be termed *an administration of grace*.

The end in view is the same in each, — the highest piety; but it is manifest that the process of administration, in the two cases, must differ on the grounds of morality. Righteousness will demand in each according to the peculiar principles of each; and it is the business of moral philosophy to find and bring into system these specifically distinctive principles.

---

### CHAPTER III.

#### THE PROCESS OF THE DIVINE ADMINISTRATION IN JUSTICE.

God is righteously the sovereign over man on the ground of his absolute perfection, and in the interest of man's highest susceptibilities, he will legislate for the end of piety. Both as

the Lord to be worshipped and served, and as the searcher of the human heart, and knowing what is in man, he alone can adapt his legislation and its execution to the best attainment of man's religious interest, and regulate the whole process of his administration by what is ethically demanded in his own right and man's religious wants. By keeping the great end of God's administration in view, we shall be able clearly to determine many ethical principles which must be applied in the process of the Divine administration.

We here fix attention only upon those principles which stand in a government of equity, and which must control where no provisions of grace and mercy have been made. It will thus give the general principles of an administration of strict justice.

1. *Positive Authority must be made especially prominent.* Piety is the end of the Divine government, and the most essential element of piety is *faith*. By this is meant that cordial confidence in God which induces joyful obedience and worship. It thus "works by love, purifies the heart, and overcomes the world." The cultivation of the strongest faith will be the means for attaining the highest piety.

From the very constitution of man, in his finiteness, he must often, through all his experience, be obliged to act where he cannot estimate the general consequences of his conduct, nor see the reasons in things themselves, why he should do one thing and not another. His ignorance and weakness are the source of his want, and they make it imperative that he should commit himself confidently to the direction of the will of God in its admitted wisdom and benevolence. He should cultivate the spirit of unquestioning obedience, in whatever way God discloses his will, and make it to be abundantly sufficient for his faith and practice, that he has a plain Divine declaration of what God would have him to believe and to do.

This is not at all in disparagement of his reason, but from the highest demand of his reason. He must take many things upon

trust, both of belief and practice ; and it is the highest reason to trust God's testimony and yield to God's authority. When in the light of his reason he has found the source of all truth in the Absolute Reason, it is the highest worthiness of man to trust himself unhesitatingly to the Absolute. God must do and command many things which the finite cannot comprehend, but which in his finiteness he may know cannot be unreasonable, since they come from the fountain of all reason. It is his dignity, and thus his duty, to walk by faith, since he cannot walk by sight, and since his faith has its ground in the absolute perfections of God.

In this very point is the essence of piety, as distinguished from morality. Morality clearly sees the ultimate right, in seeing in the spiritual being what is due to his own excellence ; and thus the conscience constrains to virtue in the very light of reason itself. Piety learns the ignorance and emptiness of man, and the wisdom and fulness of God ; and thus is constrained to unquestioning submission by a proper distrust of self, and a lively faith in God. Only by this cultivation of an unshaken faith in God can the human soul be raised to the highest elevation in piety. Piety is, throughout, a most intelligent grace, for it most clearly apprehends its own weakness and God's sufficiency, and thus most reasonably withdraws from self-confidence to trust in God.

The Divine administration should, therefore, perpetually adapt itself to such a want in man. It should cultivate an unwavering confidence in the Divine declaration and character ; and thus keep constantly prominent *positive* commandments, which throw the force of simple authority upon man, and enjoin obedience, not because reason can see why, but only because such is God's will. That God commands it is made the only reason that man should obey it. The sole motive is made to be in faith ; confidence that God commands nothing which is not reasonable, and yet disclosing nothing in the command itself to show that it is reasonable.

The use of positive authority may find its expression in the unqualified prohibition of the fruit of a particular tree, or the unexplained injunction of the right of circumcision, or the institution of a broad ritual of positive ceremonies ; but in many ways, it may beforehand be determined, that God's administration will keep prominent and constant the use of positive commandments, and discipline man to piety by cultivating his simple faith in God's trustworthiness.

2. *God's administration must regard both virtue and freedom for piety's sake.* Piety cannot be where virtue is discarded ; and hence God's legislation will enforce all morality for the ends of piety. Piety cannot consist with the disregard of human rights and public freedom ; and hence God's legislation will enforce all social and political duties for the ends of piety. Piety consists in the whole religious portion of our being going out habitually in joyful and intimate communion with God ; and this is the highest life of humanity ; the deepest want of the soul ; the greatest dignity of an immortal but dependent spirit. God's entire government regards this as its great end, and as this cannot be without virtue and political integrity, so God commands them, and punishes the want not only as vicious and criminal, but as sinful, — a transgression not only of reason, and of human law, but of God's commandments. In this sense, all immorality, or disobedience to righteous human law, is also impiety. They become as really dishonorable to God as idolatry and blasphemy. God will thus hold man to perpetual morality, and civil allegiance, for the end of piety.

3. *God's administration should especially guard those susceptibilities which most endanger piety.* The animal appetites, when left to their passionate impulses, not only collide with man's ethical, but more especially with his religious interests. All intemperance, and voluptuousness, and pride, not only blunt the sensibility of the conscience, but they quite as effectually render torpid the whole religious susceptibility. All reverence

and confiding dependence are lost in audacity and vain-confidence, whenever the lusts of the senses prevail. A licentious man will necessarily be an irreligious man. A debauchee is ever a religious scoffer.

The Divine administration, therefore, should guard all those appetites, especially, which so readily destroy the delicacy of all religious feeling. God's legislation should control the occupations and pursuits of life ; the manners and habits of mankind ; the food and the dress, so far as they minister to the inordinate passions of the race. Especially will the marriage relation be held sacred, and all divorce and " putting away " be forbidden, except where conjugal infidelity would itself tend to render impious the virtuous party. Such legislation in God looks not merely to purposes of public morality and of civil freedom, but far more comprehensively, to the ends of religion and piety. He would hold man back from all intemperance and licentiousness, that he might have pure piety ; a sweet trust in God ; a joyful communion with him, and a spiritual worship.

4. *The Divine administration will enforce and regulate Divine worship.* Piety must go out in many acts of religious devotion. Private and public worship must be recognized ; for piety must commune with God both in secret and openly. Religious instruction must also be secured ; for piety would offer an intelligent service. God only can give the necessarily authoritative regulations for such religious services, and secure a consistent and harmonious order of worship. God, therefore, must directly legislate in matters of religion. The time, the manner, and perhaps the place, for offering to him the public prayers and praises, must be determined by him, at least in so general a manner that man may thereby gain the knowledge of what shall be acceptable in particulars. A religious ritual, more or less extensive, must somewhere be propounded for man, with all the authority of a Divine sanction.

A Sabbath, of perpetual and universal obligation, is itself a

want in the human constitution. Not merely as a rest from all secular employment, and thus a relief and necessary relaxation from physical engagements, and thereby salutary for both body and mind ; but more especially a demand for the wants of man's spiritual and immortal being ; an uninterrupted and undiverted flowing out of the religious susceptibilities, in that very communion which exercises and strengthens the soul for its coming perpetual employment in heaven. The absence of a perpetual Sabbath in God's legislation would seem a strange oversight, in the attainment of the very end for which all his government is administered. A Sabbath must be made for man ; his piety cannot else be perfected ; his religious wants cannot otherwise be satisfied. It is not that he may worship God in a communion every day alike. He has secular wants to which he must attend, and in ministering to which he must also thankfully and piously acknowledge God ; but his religious well-being demands transactions and communications with this God in a special and exclusive manner, when no secular cares shall be allowed to intrude, and no sensual interests disturb. He needs a regularly-recurring day of rest from all that is secular, and an opportunity fully to absorb himself in that which is sacred.

With a Sabbath there may also be expected the positive institution of all necessary religious ordinances for man's cultivation in piety. The church should be constituted as embodying the company of the pious ; its officers and ordinances should be officially established, and its general organization settled, to hold on through all time. Man cannot say, in many things, what his piety needs, nor what God will accept at his hands ; hence God's own legislation must fix, at least, the general outlines of his visible kingdom and worship.

5. *Divine legislation may affix the sanctions of positive penalties.* Positive penalties might, at first view, appear inconsistent with the end of Divine legislation for piety's sake. Piety is,

in its spirit, complete loyalty ; it obeys solely from love. How then can it admit of the constraint of positive penalty? Obedience from fear of the penalty cannot be piety. Does not, then, the Divine administration, in its use of threatenings, expect obedience from other motives than love, and consent to be satisfied with something less than complete loyalty?

The following considerations will show that the use of pains and penalties, in the Divine government, is still fully consistent with its end in piety :

*First.* Penalty is of service to piety, even in its restraints as legality. It would be well for the sinner to be held back from transgression by fear, though the law was not satisfied by any such constrained innocence, that other motives consistent with piety might come in and induce a perpetuation of conduct conformed to law from complete loyalty. Such constraint of the wicked, from mere fear, would exclude the influence also of their open transgression upon the righteous, and withdraw so much of temptation from man, and thus find an end in the direct interest of piety.

*Secondly.* More directly, penalty is necessary for the sake of piety, as an expression of the Divine feeling. Law expresses the feeling of sovereignty in no other manner, adequately, than in its sanctions. The whole emphasis given to the precept is in the retribution appended to it. In this only is the true index of the sovereign will. Here is seen just how much God hates disobedience, and though the direction of the Divine will is given in the precept, yet is its intensity manifested only in the penalty. In the very penalty is made the exhibition of God's regard for piety, by his hatred of impiety ; and thus an exhibition of the Divine character to the holy, that they may be the more loyal, and love him as their sovereign the more on that account. This is the very end that God seeks in the disclosure of his judgments ; not that men should obey through slavish fear, but that they should read therein his hatred to sin, and

henceforth serve him because he is a holy God, and demands loyal obedience.

*Thirdly.* Piety finds its proper motive to obedience in the very sanctions. The reward promised to the pious is valued by them in nothing so much as that it is an evidence of the approbation of the Master they love ; and the punishment threatened would be in nothing so fearful, as that it was the index of God's disapprobation and displeasure. To the loyal soul, it is thus more God's displeasure that is dreaded, than hell ; more God's approbation that is valued, than heaven. All that is seen in the threatened hell is this Divine wrath ; and all that is noticed in the promised heaven is this Divine approbation. Sufficient to the loyal soul is it that God approves and manifests the tokens of his regard, and to him there is heaven in nothing else. He can bear all sufferings, if God sustain by his approbation ; he cares for no happiness, if God is not in it. "His favor is life, and his loving kindness is better than life."

Thus in many ways are the Divine sanctions motives to pious loyalty ; and their Divine intention proves that the end of the Divine government is piety.

6. *The promised reward must be equal and coetaneous with the piety.* If there is no specific promise of reward to obedience attached to certain precepts, still is this reward always implied in the converse of the threatened penalty. "In the day thou eatest thereof, thou shalt die," no more fully expresses a threat, than it implies a promise, — in the day thou eatest not of it, thou shalt live. To all piety there is the pledge of the Divine approbation ; and this is the very reward which loyalty seeks, no matter how manifested.

This is due to loyalty. It behooves God to show his favor to all pious obedience. When there is piety, then must God approve of it. So long as there is piety, and so much as there is of it, so constant and so great must God show his favor. The pious, from the equity of the divine character, cannot fail of the full reward for all their loyalty.

7. *The sin of the subject may not admit of his annihilation.* A sin committed becomes a fact in the realm, and brings its necessary influences with it. It is a new causality introduced by the sinner, and perpetually working out its effects. Henceforth the moral universe cannot be as if that fact of sin had not been. Henceforth, therefore, it is due to the universe, and it behooves God in his own righteousness, to manifest a mark of disapprobation precisely equal to, and perpetually counteractive of, the evil influences of that sinful fact. The fact admits of no annihilation, and the consequences of the fact are themselves undying and perpetual; and no coetaneous displeasure can do that which is due to the universe, in this perpetual evil. That manifested displeasure must go down parallel with the evil influences of that sinful fact, both in the right of the moral universe and of God; and how shall that displeasure have its manifestation in any annihilation of the sinner? Considerations come in, connected with sin, which may not morally admit that the sinner should ever cease to be, or cease from being an object of the Divine disapprobation. Terrible as is such a consideration, it seems only the terror of strict ethical rectitude. If no provision of grace were made, the Divine administration could have no corrective for sin, except perpetual disapprobation towards the sinner.

8. *Retribution must synchronize with the sin.* We have already seen that the reward must be coetaneous with the piety; and considerations come in with sin, which more especially admit of no delay of punishment. The penalty expresses God's regard for his law; how much he hates disobedience to it. A time of respite to the sinner is, in its continuance, a time of disregard to law, and a plain contradiction to that feeling which the sanction to the law expresses. All that can ever demand the manifested Divine disapprobation, does this at once upon the conviction of the sin; and if any delay be given, the law has nothing to show why it may not forbear as well its threatened

infliction forever. Why, after so long a delay, it might well be said, bring up the punishment now? Such capricious punishment would defeat the whole end of penalty in upholding piety.

9. *An administration of justice can allow no room for pardon.* In civil legislation, there may often come in, from some peculiar circumstances of the criminal, considerations which will make a pardon as conservative of the end of public freedom, as the execution of the punishment; and, in such a case, pardon is morally righteous. It does not subvert the end of the law.

But the end of the law, in the Divine government, is piety. This is sustained in the most effective manner, only through the precisely adequate penalty. The perfection of the government secures perfect equity in the law, and in the conviction of the sinner, and thus leaves no righteous room for pardon. Just the righteous threatening has been appended, and just the amount of guilt has been disclosed, and thus the penalty incurred must be executed, or the ground at once falls away on which the law-giver's reward for piety had been righteously placed. The law regards the highest piety as end no longer, but has consulted some other end in the pardon of the sinner.

With a penalty appended to law by perfect intelligence, and the detection and conviction of guilt by complete omniscience, there remains in full force the ethical claim for full infliction of the penalty. Any remission would, so far, strike down the end of piety which the law was designed to subserve.

10. *The obedient can bring God under no obligation beyond the due approbation of their piety.* The whole end of the law is fulfilled in love. It expresses God's love to piety. It is designed to draw out pious obedience, which is the service of love. It cancels all the claims of piety, in the manifestations of God's love toward the pious. If God's government has done all that love to piety demands, both in the legislation and rewarding approbation, it has done all that law and government

can do ; and now sovereignty can make the challenge to the universe, and say what more could I have done for my kingdom, that I have not done in it.

If any have sinned, they have done so under all the opposing considerations which God as a sovereign in justice could present. If any righteous have been disturbed by sinners, they have had all the redress and assistance against the injury that they can demand, in the witness of God's penal abhorrence of the sin, and his retributive favor for their piety. Their piety must have the approbation of all the good, as truly as the approbation of their own consciences ; and when such is awarded to them, they can ask God, in equity, for nothing more. The most complete piety has been the servant's excellency, and not for the sovereign's aggrandizement. All the homage rendered to God has been his due, and has added nothing to him which was not his in his own right ; and has moreover conduced to the servant's highest well-being in the consummation of his own excellence and dignity. In all this highest service and God's approbation for it, it is his to thank God for the privilege of life and action under such a government, not for God to thank him for having performed his part so well in it. He has done to God only what he ought to have done in equity, and has no claim beyond the approbation already given. God has his claim to perpetual gratitude, that he gave the subject his being, and continues it under such an administration ; the subject has no claims in equity for his piety, that have not already been cancelled in the Divine favor.

Complete piety is thus perpetually a legal heaven ; a full reward of bliss to all its worshippers ; the highest heaven to which an angel can ascend ; and in that heaven spontaneous praise and gratitude must ever flow on as due to God, and no arresting of the onward stream of thanksgiving can occur, as if sometimes God must reciprocate and the tide of gratitude flow back from him to his pious worshippers. That current of heavenly praise

can never set but in one direction ; it is rightfully and forever flowing out from each worshipping spirit perpetually toward the throne, and received and absorbed by Him who sitteth upon it as his righteous due forever and ever.

With these leading principles, which must ever determine the process of an administration of God's government in justice, we have sufficient for our direction, in their application to any assumed system of religion, to decide what is of God, and what is some profane invention or spurious addition from man. The *particular duties* of a religion, which should be inculcated in an administration of pure justice, must be made out from the commandments given, and which are no part of a system of moral science ; but the principles by which we must determine the divinity of such a religion are above made sufficiently plain.

---

#### CHAPTER IV.

##### THE PROCESS OF THE DIVINE ADMINISTRATION IN GRACE.

LET it be remarked here in general, that ethical science is purely a *system of ends*. Pure Morality has its ultimate end in the excellency of man's rational spirit, and constrains in duty for the sake of the highest worthiness of reason alone. But in other directions, other ends may be perceived which it may be important to attain, but which may never be pursued in conflict with the ultimate end of morality. The determination how such ends may be attained in consistency with morality, brings them all within the province of Ethical Philosophy.

Civil freedom is another end than morality, but this may not be sustained at the expense of virtue. State authority, legislating for freedom's sake, must conform to pure morality ; and the

determination how this may be so effected, brings the whole science of jurisprudence as a system of ends in freedom, also within the province of Moral Philosophy.

And so also is piety another end than morality, yet must not piety be promoted in any conflict with virtue. The Divine authority in the end of piety must accord with pure morality, and the determination how this may be brings religion as truly as jurisprudence within the province of Moral Philosophy.

And this holds true, not only in the Divine administration of justice, but equally so in God's administration of grace. This contemplates man as condemned by the law of justice, and hopeless of all restoration to piety and favor by the mere action of law, and seeks out a way of restoration and pardon for the sinner, and thus keeps fully in view the end of piety. But these provisions of grace may in no way contravene morality, and the determination how grace may prevail, in consistency with all the claims of equity, brings the Christian scheme of Redemption, still in the end of piety, within the province of Moral Philosophy.

All systems of ends must harmonize with morality, and thus all come within Moral Science.

We now take up the Divine Administration in Grace, and seek to determine how it must proceed in order to a complete conformity with pure morality; and in order to apprehend the difficulty, and notwithstanding which, the practicability, also, of such determined accordance, we shall need here to recapitulate and bring under one view our past conclusions.

We have already seen how authority stands in complete conformity with morality. Sovereignty must have a righteous foundation in its inherent qualifications for governing, and must then go out within the lines of its own righteous jurisdiction, and in this view authority itself will bind the conscience. The man will degrade his rationality, and act unworthy of himself as a spiritual being, if he violate the mandates of righteous authority.

But authority is not needed simply in pure morality. That is obedience for virtue's sake alone. The sole constraint is highest spiritual worthiness, and neither reward nor penalty can come in as any coercion in the fulfilment of moral duty. Other ends than morality are, however, found important. Man must live in society, and society, through its interacting choices, becomes an organic community known as a state, and the choices of each must be constrained in harmony with the highest freedom of choice in the whole, and hence the public freedom becomes an important end to be attained, and which can only be subserved by authority. If the selfish will not be restrained by purely moral considerations, then it is perfectly in conformity with pure morality that the state should restrain them, for its freedom's sake, by pains and penalties. Obedience from mere legality does not make the citizen virtuous ; it only answers the end of freedom, and perseveres in political innocence. For freedom's sake, authority may righteously act, and constrain by pains and penalties.

So, again, man is dependent and helpless. In his very constitution he finds the need for an absolute ground of trust and confidence,—an all-perfect Being whom he may revere and adore. No conformity to all the claims of pure morality, as found in the imperatives which a knowledge of his rational being awakens, can satisfy these higher wants of his religious being. When the being of this absolute God is recognized, there is apprehended at once, in his perfections, a valid ground for righteous sovereignty, and a need that his authority direct just how these religious susceptibilities of man's being should go out in pious service and homage. The sanctions to his commandments indicate his regard for piety and his abhorrence of impiety, and these are designed to induce obedience from the cordial approbation and love of just such a being. Such constraint from complete loyalty is alone piety. Not as a hireling or a slave, but solely with a loyal, trusting, loving heart, does any

obedience satisfy the Divine law. Legality may subserve public freedom, but not piety; complete loyalty only can stand in God's sight. This makes more than the highest worthiness of the man, viewed in the fulfilment of all the claims of his rational spirit alone; even the fulfilment of all the claims of his religious being, in obedience to an absolute sovereign from love. Inasmuch as man now knows himself to be more than ethical, even a religious being, so his very morality demands of him that he should fulfil the claims of that higher nature and obey God from love to him. A Divine government may thus righteously use authority for the end of highest piety.

But the next step brings with it great difficulty of explication. The administration of justice is precisely adapted, in the Divine government, to every claim of pure morality. The law and its sanctions are exactly adapted to reveal the character of God, and throw the strongest influence upon man to induce obedience and worship from pure loyalty, and thus in the highest degree promote piety. But this administration has failed to secure universal piety. Multitudes are not loyal, but rebellious. The best government that could be administered in the end of piety has proved inefficient; and now, can any new provision be made consistent with pure morality? Should not this administration of justice go on, blessing all the pious that it may, and punishing all the impious that it must? So, I suppose, all finite intelligence must have affirmed.

The strongest objections to the Christian plan of redemption apply just at this point. Among others less profound is the weighty difficulty felt by Kant, in viewing Christianity as having a common end with morality. If Christianity be judged in reference to the sole end of pure morality, then is the difficulty insuperable. For no motive may be allowed except the pure love of virtue, and any introduction of substitution and atonement is immoral. The kindness of benevolent sacrifice may demand gratitude and love from the beneficiaries, but this can-

not be accepted for the pure love of virtue. No pure love of virtue in the substitute can stand for others, nor be vicarious for theirs ; for pure morality demands personal virtue. An acceptance of any thing else is the subversion of immutable right, and could only reflect at once immorality and unrighteousness upon any government that should tolerate it.

An ingenious philosophical explanation is then attempted by Kant, by which God may ethically accept one who has sinned, and who must ever be imperfect, but it admits of no substitution. An Ideal of perfect humanity, he supposes, may induce to the adoption of sentiments leading to our imitation of it ; and these sentiments as permanently active, though only inducing a perpetual process toward perfection without the finite ever being able to complete it, may be accepted as comprehending in them the principle of perfection. This adoption of the Ideal is the man's faith in the Son of God.

But permanent perpetual progress in good does away no past guilt ; no supererogation can do it ; no other person may do it. It is a debt of sin and obligation to punishment, and the sinner only can undergo it. No innocent being, how magnanimous soever, can bear it for the guilty. The adoption of the new sentiment is a self-crucifixion of the old man ; and this perpetuated, in the perpetual willingness of the new man that there should be such self-crucifixion, is a perpetual sacrifice that gives the ground of hope for complete justification. This is Kant's Gospel according to pure ethics.

But such a spurious Christian theory, as necessary to explain away the intrinsic immorality of the Scripture atonement from the point of view taken, finds no occasion from the true point of view, viz. : that the end of God's government is piety, not morality. Benevolent suffering may promote love, and even kindle it anew, if lost ; and thus secure obedience through complete loyalty. This, not pure morality, is the end of God's government, and readily admits of Christian substitution. But this

gracious administration owes still to morality the securing of two distinct results. One is, the restoration to loyalty of so many of the lost as shall compensate for the provision made ; the other, the confirmation of the Divine authority in the pious regard of all the obedient, at least as effectually in the grace of redemption as could have been done in the justice of penal execution. All through the Divine administration, either in justice or grace, the grand end is the highest piety in consistency with righteousness ; and thus the authority of sovereignty must be sustained on the one hand, and in such a manner as shall most strongly constrain to piety consistently with morality on the other. In the gracious administration, the authority of the old administration must still stand, though given up as the way of securing piety ; and higher influences to love and loyal obedience must be brought in, securing the return to allegiance of many who would otherwise have remained incorrigible in their rebellion. Without each of these, the end of piety and the claim of morality cannot be sustained. We have thus to determine the process of a gracious administration, with these two results in view :

How Divine authority may be sustained ?

How stronger motives to loyalty may be introduced ?

---

## CHAPTER V.

### THE PROCESS IN THE DIVINE ADMINISTRATION OF GRACE FOR SUSTAINING AUTHORITY.

THE administration of justice failing in its end by the sin of the subjects, and a new administration of grace introduced with provisions for recovering the sinner to piety and the Divine favor, it is yet necessary that the authority which instituted and

administered the old government of justice should still be respected and revered. That was a righteous government, conformed in all its parts to every moral claim, and thus worthy of everlasting approbation. The same sovereign still reigns over the same subjects, and only changes his administration, as in the changed circumstances by sin he must, in order to attain the unchanged end of piety; and thus both for the conviction of righteous condemnation, and also for the sustaining the righteous claims to repentance and confession of the sin committed, the authority of the old form of government must, in all its claims, be fully sustained as having been wholly righteous and valid. Some of the principles which must be recognized in the process of the administration of grace, for effecting this vindication of authority, will here be given, and which must so far determine, on ethical grounds, how the new administration must be executed.

1. *The principle of positive authority must be perpetuated.* The very end of piety demanded under the old administration, that laws should be given in which no reason could be seen from the nature of the case, but which rested their whole constraint for obedience upon God's authority alone. Nothing could so effectually cultivate confidence and dependence upon God, and love to his supremacy, as the throwing of the subject upon the sole sentiment of loyalty, and demanding prompt obedience where no other reason was given than that, "thus saith the Lord." But under the new administration there is even a stronger claim for this from the same source. Especially as a sinner does the man's whole interest in a religious experience turn upon his confidence in his sovereign, and demand such influences as shall best inspire with faith and love. Precepts, resting upon God's authority solely, must still be given.

But more particularly is this required, in order that the gracious administration may in no manner weaken the authority of that in justice. There is an ethical claim, in which it behooves

God for his own consistency of character, not in his grace by any means to seem to discard his authority in justice. If the gracious administration have no precepts resting solely on authority, against which the sin and rebellion of the subject in the former administration was directed, it would necessarily be deemed a relinquishment of the whole principle of positive authority, and stand out as a fair implication and tacit admission that God had grown wise by experience, and now saw the inexpediency of introducing again that principle which had been the occasion of so much disaster in the former method of legislation. No such implication may at all be tolerated, and hence the gracious legislation will also include the principle of positive authority. The end of piety, consistency with morality, and especially the vindication of Divine authority under the old administration, all demand it.

*2. The penalty of law must not be remitted except on some ground of equivalent substitution.* The design of the gracious administration is to restore the sinner to piety and the Divine favor. In some way, therefore, it must contemplate the remission of penalty. The infliction of penalty is, essentially, the manifestation of Divine displeasure. The very element, which gives to penal evil all its sting, is that it carries to the conscience the conviction of God's abhorrence and displeasure. Penalty, thus, must in some way be removed, or the Divine favor cannot be restored, since restoration to favor would be the annihilation of that very element which made the evil to be penal.

As penalty itself cannot be endured, and grace prevail, and as penalty cannot be discarded, and leave the divine authority without any sanction, some other sanction must come into its place. The sinner is to be freed from penalty; no other being can bear it for him, inasmuch as the very essence of penalty is Divine displeasure against the sinner punished, and no suffering by another than the sinner can have this ingredient of Divine displeasure; therefore something not punishment, but which

other than it is, yet to take the place of it, some substitute for it, is yet to be provided.

And this substitute for penalty must be fully equivalent for it, and sustain all the ends which it was designed to subserve as well as the full penalty inflicted would do. The penalty was meant to be an adequate expression of the sovereign's will, manifesting how much he was pleased with piety, and displeased with impiety; and unless he designs to retract that manifestation of his will, and discard the equity and validity of the authority which has gone out in his legislation, he must put something of at least equal efficacy for that end in its place, and for the sake of which the penalty may be remitted. Any thing not a full equivalent would so far impeach the sovereign's consistency, as manifesting formerly too much regard to authority, or now too little, and which would itself be fatal to all authority as convicting it of immorality.

3. *The estimate of this vicarious equivalent must be made simply in reference to the end of piety.* The Divine administration is not in the end of morality, nor of freedom, but solely of piety. We are not at all to look here for that which will subserve the ends of morality or of civil polity, but solely the interests of religion in securing piety. If we were to seek for any substitution in pure morality, we should be at once stopped in its inconsistency. The constraint in morality is the pure love of virtue, in the worthiness of character which obedience secures; and the alternative to this is that which alone can be called penalty in pure morality,—my own unworthiness and sense of moral degradation in my immorality. Here, no substitute for the penalty is conceivable; for conscious disapprobation and debasement are as necessary for my vicious action as conscious approbation and dignity are for my virtuous action. Such penalty neither can be nor ought to be changed. Any substitution here would be an ethical absurdity. We suppose no such change; we carefully discriminate, and attempt to intro-

duce no such substitution. Morality can admit of no changes of duty or of penalty ; of no expiation or atonement.

When we seek for remission of punishment in civil government, all we need is something to sustain the sovereign authority, in the interests of public freedom, as well as the penalty ; and if this can be found, righteous commutations of punishment, and pardons of criminals may be effected with no detriment to the commonwealth. Substitutions for *human* penalties need only to be estimated in the interests of that freedom which they were designed to sustain.

But the end of piety demands that all substitution be estimated solely in the light of piety, and for the sustaining of authority as bearing upon religious interest. The penalty may have been the best possible sanction to law in its original enactment, and sustained the ends of piety as, under mere law, nothing else could ; but, when law has been broken and piety become lost, if there is any substitute which will then sustain law and subserve piety as well as the penalty, it may be taken. But in estimating what it must be that is equivalent, the end in view must not be as if it were in pure morality, nor as if it were in civil polity, but solely in the end of religion as sustained in the authority of the divine government. We shall be greatly assisted in a righteous estimate of the Christian atonement when we have accurately distinguished the sole end which it can or ought to subserve.

4. *All hope of restoration to the Divine favor must rest on the ground of this equivalent substitute.* Were it supposable that more than one thing could be an adequate substitution, yet the fact that one had been instituted must necessarily exclude all others. It is the sovereign's prerogative to affix sanctions to law, and when penalty is to be remitted through a substitution, the same considerations must make it the prerogative of the sovereign to fix the substitute. Both penalty and substitute are designed as adequate expressions of his will, and he alone is

competent to settle what shall precisely express his regard for piety. If the sovereign has not ratified the substitute in his own appointment, there is no validity in it, and no confidence to be put upon it ; and if he has ratified a specific substitute, no confidence may be placed on any other. God cannot righteously permit the sinner to determine what substitute he will rest his confidence upon, any more than he may permit the sinner to choose what penalty he will consent to suffer. The penalty must be of God's imposing, and the substitute must be of God's instituting ; and the sinner who presumes to rest his hope on any other must forfeit all the advantages offered in the gracious administration. His presumption, in putting his own in the place of God's revealed substitute for the penalty, must really aggravate his condemnation, and augment the executed penalty.

All penances, ritual observances, self-righteous impositions, and substitutions of any kind for the one grand substitute of God's providing, must be not only vain but truly heaven-provoking. We must see in that substitute God's own expression of feeling, or we get no sanction to his law, nor support for his authority, and of course nothing which ought to stand instead of the literally-executed penalty.

*5. Some manifestation of the Divine displeasure must be made against sin, while the probation in grace is progressing.* The old penalty is forborne, and patience spares the condemned sinner. A new trial on the footing of grace has commenced, and if this trial eventuate in reformation and return to pious loyalty, the old penalty is to be wholly abrogated, and the reformed sinner received into everlasting favor.

But while this delay lasts to give space for a new trial, and holds back the stroke of the old penalty, it is due to God's authority, and demanded in the end of piety, that God keep up some manifested displeasure against the offence which has subverted the end of the old administration. It will not be the execution of the old penalty, for that is held in abeyance ; but

it will be some form of suffering, in a curse which will mark his displeasure against the sin, and at the same time conform to the ends of recovery in the gracious administration. It will serve as a discipline, and not stand out as a vindictive retribution.

This may come as some curse upon the ground, or upon man himself in his sentient being, which shall last through all the generations of the spared race, and under which the creation shall groan and travail in pain from the beginning of sin onwards. The displeasure of God, and his abhorrence of the old iniquity, may terribly admonish the subjects of grace through their whole life of suffering and bereavement and sickness and final death of the body ; yet it will not be in the penal infliction of judgment without mercy, but a severe discipline in mercy, so that all may remember the great fact that God terribly abhors sin even while he makes provision to pardon it, and waits for his spared subjects to turn from it. He chastises as a father ; he admonishes as a teacher ; but he does not yet punish as a sovereign judge and executioner. He waits to be gracious, though his waiting is amid all the severe but salutary discipline which is designed to bring back to piety.

In all the above principles, the new administration will keep the vindication of the Divine authority out permanently before mankind, for the end of highest piety.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

### THE PROCESS IN A GRACIOUS ADMINISTRATION BY WHICH STRONGER INFLUENCES TO LOYALTY ARE GIVEN.

THE old administration of justice failed of its end in securing piety, and the new administration is introduced for the end of restoring multitudes to piety. There is no reason for this

change of administration from justice to grace, if the latter cannot secure the sinner's return to loyalty. But surely all such results may well be deemed hopeless, if in the new administration there be not provision made for higher motives and stronger influences to love and obedience than the old administration exhibited and exerted. That failed to secure perpetuated piety, though beginning in loyalty; the same measure of influence cannot, therefore, be deemed adequate to restore and confirm piety in subjects already rebellious.

There is, then, an ethical claim, if a gracious administration be introduced, that it shall provide stronger influences to piety than the old administration presented. That gave as strong an exhibition of the sovereign's regard to piety as justice could secure, but the failure of that may give occasion for presenting new and higher motives than could at first have been possible. Such occasions for subsequent higher gracious influences foreseen, justified the introduction of the first form of administration, though it was well known to Omniscience that its introduction would be followed by the failure of its own direct end. But now in the introduction of the gracious legislation, the wisdom and consistency of the sovereign can be vindicated in no other manner than by introducing means of greater influence. The form of government ought not to change, if the interests of piety can gain nothing.

We need, thus, to determine how the end of Divine legislation in piety may be reached through a more efficacious process than any administration of justice could supply. The form of justice must first be taken; afterwards grace may come in, and be more effective in the application of the following higher motives :

1. *The benevolence manifested in the substitution itself.* In the administration of justice, every command and sanction was in full conformity with morality, and thus all its motives to piety fairly appealed to the conscience of the subject. Every sinner,

therefore, knows his desert of punishment, and that its infliction would be righteous. But if just at the point when the arm is uplifted to strike the terrible blow so consciously deserved, the sovereign at his own expense effects a way for deliverance and arrests the descending stroke of the executioner, nothing can appeal more forcibly to the sinner to repent and return to loyalty, than this melting kindness in the breast of offended sovereignty. The sternness of authority changes to compassion, and the vengeance of sovereignty relapses into the most benevolent regard before the eyes of the rebels themselves. They see presented a plan which fully sustains his own authority and majesty, and which also includes the reformation, pardon, and restoration of the guilty ; and in this benevolence there is altogether a stronger influence to melt and reclaim the guilty than in all the terrible preparation for the full execution of the legal penalty.

Here is the yearning heart of kindness ; the tenderness of a father ; and it works more powerfully upon the obdurate heart and the stubborn will of the rebel, to melt in love and recover to loyalty, than all the frowns and vindictive penal retributions of offended sovereignty.

2. *The influence of patience.* In a government of justice there is no place for patience. This is delay of infliction, when the penalty has been incurred ; and such delay is injustice, unless some substitute for penalty be presented. On the ground of an adequate substitution, patience may endure even to long-suffering. And such delay of penal infliction not merely gives time for reflection, and the working of conviction and self-condemnation in the experience of the sinner, but it is itself a strong motive to break off from a course of sin, which has already exhausted so much of the Divine forbearance. The reflection, that Divine long-suffering has been so much abused, is a motive of growing intensity to abuse no longer, but to confess and return and seek reconciliation.

A wicked heart may use the occasion of patience to sin the more determinedly, and "because sentence against an evil work is not executed speedily, therefore, it may be the more fully set to do evil." But this is a gross perversion and resistance of its natural influence. The proper tendency is to shame for the long abuse, and a discontinuance of it; and this must be resisted by a more desperate stubbornness of will, in order to be overborne and discarded. "The goodness of God leadeth to repentance," and especially goodness in the form of patient delay of deserved punishment; and that heart must be desperately wicked which takes advantage of the very kindness that spares, to sin the more determinedly against it.

3. *The influence of offered pardon.* A conviction of utter hopelessness in sin induces sullen despair or malignant recklessness. A state of mind is induced which will not admit of the salutary reflection of ill-desert and well-merited retribution. The agony of present punishment, and the fearful looking-for of more fiery indignation, drives off all the preliminary conditions of reformation, and shuts out the considerations which might lead to a return of piety and loyal subjection. Hopelessness in sin paralyzes all effort to escape from it.

But an administration of grace at once throws the light of hope upon the sinner's condition. The way is open to return to loyalty, and receive an entire amnesty for the past and perpetual favor for the future. Such an offer of pardon, seen to be both consistent and sincere, is an affecting motive to come in confession, to ask for it, and gladly take it from the gracious sovereign. Self-moved, God prepares the way for it, and makes the proposal. Instead of vindicating his authority by judgment, he provides pardon in his mercy. Misery may now be avoided, and bliss secured; the wrath of justice may be averted, and the favor of grace gained; the pangs of conscience in its guilt may be relieved, and the peace of self-approbation acquired; and such considerations must tend back to piety and allegiance

more strongly than any motives which justice and judgment may offer. What the law could not do, because in its condemnation it works "concupiscence" and "death," the grace in the Gospel of the new administration may effect, through its forgiving spirit. Hope takes away the sullenness of desperation.

4. *The inspiring appeal to personal worthiness and dignity.* The fact of man's conscious guilt does not destroy his consciousness of rational faculty and religious endowment, nor does it diminish the conviction, that his true dignity can be attained only in the way of piety and obedience to God. The most hardened rebel against the throne of heaven knows that his suppression of all reverence and homage, and his withdrawal of all trust and dependence, is really his degradation and his shame. His ingratitude and contempt debase him. He well knows that nothing can take from him this debasement and shame, but returning allegiance, confidence, and love.

Confession of sin, contrition of heart before God, deep humility manifested in all ways of suitable expression, are becoming to the sinner; and it is a very false sense of human dignity, and really nothing but the most contemptible self-conceit, to stand out in sullen pride before the majesty of an offended sovereign. Humility before God is man's honor; prostrate adoration is the subject's dignity and glory, in the light of eternal truth. Even angels are never more exalted than when "covering their faces with their wings," they cry before the Divine presence, "holy, holy, holy, Lord God Almighty."

The new administration provides for such return to allegiance and homage, and gives occasion for God to confirm the manliness and dignity of such restored loyalty, in his open approbation and acceptance of it; and surely such an influence must be highly arousing and inspiriting. It stimulates to renewed struggles against all that debases man, more than the application of legal severity can ever effect. Man was made to

confide and worship, to serve and adore ; and if in his impiety he has " cast off the fear of God and restrained prayer before him," it is his shame ; and he can never recover his lost worthiness till he comes back in confession and contrition, and owns again his obligations of obedience. God's gracious interposition invites to such return, and appeals to all such sentiments of true dignity and honor, and works more strongly to reclaim to this manly dignity through all that is ingenuous and ennobling, than any penal terrors can be made to effect.

5. *The augmented manifestation of the Divine regard for piety.* The sanction was designed as an adequate and exact expression of God's regard to law, and the end of piety it had in view. It said, as plainly as law could be made to speak, that God desires piety in his subjects with a strength of feeling commensurate with all the reward promised, and that he hates impiety proportioned to all the penalty threatened. And when the sin has been committed and the penalty incurred, the execution of this penalty in the view of all his subjects, whether obedient or rebellious, is simply the confirmation of this regard, in precisely this degree of intensity. The inflicted penalty only confirms the precise degree of feeling expressed in the threatened penalty.

Moreover, while the actual infliction gives no augmented manifestation of God's abhorrence of impiety beyond the original threatening, so also this infliction can carry its influence for piety only to the spectator and not to the sufferer. To the sinner punished, it is wrath without mercy. It is wholly vindictive and not disciplinary. It may avail to restrain others from rebellion, but can secure no reformation in the punished sinner himself. As penal, it is not God's manifestation of strong feeling for the sinner's recovery, inasmuch as that is already a foregone conclusion, and hopeless of all realization in justice. He is treated as wholly incorrigible, and the judgment inflicted is in no expectation of repentance and restora-

tion, but as a vindication of authority in the end of piety on the behalf of others.

But in the provisions of grace, where the manifestation is given that God himself makes sacrifices for the sinner's return to just the extent of the manifested sacrifice in the substitution, does God augment the expression of his regard for piety above what is exhibited in the penalty; and this not merely before those subjects who have remained loyal, but before and directly in behalf of the guilty themselves. He really "magnifies" his law in augmenting the expression of his regard for piety more than the penalty threatened or inflicted could; and this in the most melting and effective method possible, by his own sacrifice for the sinner's redemption. God thus commends his love to the lost, and in this gives the highest possible influence for loyalty. "Herein is love, not that we first loved God, but that he first loved us."

And this influence is made to reach over the whole Divine government, in its augmented force towards universal loyalty. The already loyal see here the feelings of the sovereign towards piety, with a strength and tenderness that no penal infliction could ever manifest; and the guilty themselves have the most affecting appeal possible, to cease at once from all rebellion to so much love, and become the loyal worshippers and servants of their rightful Lord again. And thence onward, when restored to piety and favor, the influence of this sacrifice in their redemption lasts, and stimulates their obedience in love and their songs of praise for eternity. The feelings of God, shining through all the scene of prepared and accepted substitution, act on the universe of moral beings in favor of pious loyalty, as no legal exhibitions of the Divine justice could ever equal.

6. *New institutions of ritual observances.* For the cultivation of piety, it behooves the Divine lawgiver, by positive enactments, to institute religious ordinances and ritual observances, by which the method of approach to God shall be regulated,

and the general order of Divine worship promoted. This would be ethically required under an administration in justice, and still more especially under an administration of grace. As a sinner, man will be less able to order his manner of approach to the Deity acceptably, without Divine direction, than when holy. Many things might seem to discourage and perhaps forbid approach to God by the sinner, did not God himself invite to it and direct in the manner that he would accept it.

A system of legislation in grace must thus continue positive regulations in many things, and direct in reference to the times and the order of worship, and also establish positive institutions bearing upon the general culture of piety and the religious instructions and discipline of its subjects. The manner of the sinner's approach to God must necessarily differ from that which was permitted to him in his holiness, and all ritual observances must be modified from the nature of the substitution which is made vicarious for penalty, and new regulations from God must determine all these modifications.

They may be anticipated as of two varieties: such as are designed to prepare the fallen race to apprehend and receive the new administration in its clearness and completeness, and such as are adapted to build them up on the foundation of the substitution when actually laid and clearly apprehended. The first will be typical and symbolical, teaching through shadows which foretoken the coming substance; and these will be multiplied, particular and precise, according to the darkness of the human mind, and its incapacity to directly apprehend spiritual realities. The second will be more direct, simple, and spiritual, teaching the very nature and principles of the new dispensation, and corresponding openly to the plain doctrines and duties of the gospel system. One will be temporary, and only as a schoolmaster to teach what is coming; the other will last to the consummation, and be adapted to the open vision of the things in the new covenant, with all its promises and duties.

And now all these ordinances of grace will have a higher meaning, and a stronger influence for piety, than any of the institutions of the old administration of justice. All the ritual observances will embody those affecting manifestations of love and mercy which are contained in the plan of substitution, and will thus hold constantly forth to view the deeper regard for piety expressed in the sacrifice the sovereign makes, and thus the stronger motive to bring the rebel back to loyalty. Some, as the Sabbath, may belong to both dispensations; but in that of grace it will be made to have a higher import, and speak of sacrifice and substitution, and not merely of creation and providential supervision. Others will be wholly new, organizing the body of reclaimed believers and worshippers, bringing them into visible communion and fellowship, and giving to them all "one Lord, one faith, and one baptism." In all ways, the new ordinances will throw upon the heart a tenderer influence to soften, and sweeter to win the sinner again to duty; and all conspire to hold the reclaimed in perpetual loyalty, beyond what all the force of law and justice could accomplish.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

### GRAND RESULTS IN THE INTRODUCTION OF AN ADMINISTRATION OF GRACE.

SOME necessary conclusions, resulting from the provisions in an administration of grace, stand out as permanent ethical principles, and which should be here concisely stated.

1. *The principles of grace do not subvert those of justice.* Legislation must commence with positive institutions, and ordinances for piety on the ground of justice. Grace can only come in when justice has failed in securing perpetual loyalty.

The higher influences can only be introduced, when the sanctions of law have been propounded, the precept violated, and the penalty incurred.

But morality forbids that the substitution for penalty, and the provisions for reclaiming to loyalty, should subvert equity and justice. No means for reclaiming to piety may conflict with immutable morality and righteousness. With these claims of morality the administration of justice fully accorded, and thus no gracious provisions can subvert the old administration. Its principles are forever ethically sound and valid, and its subversion is an ethical impossibility. The Divine government may change its process from justice to grace, but may never deny its valid authority in either. The sovereign may change his throne and sceptre, but in taking the throne and sceptre of grace, he does not demolish, but only for the occasion leaves unoccupied, those of justice. The old administration is not subverted, the new is only on occasion substituted for it. All antinomian conclusions are wholly precluded by the true apprehension of the equivalent substitution in grace.

2. *The incorrigible sinner, under grace, is left to a "sorer punishment."* The penalty in justice has been held back in the provisions of grace that there might be an opportunity for a new trial and discipline in the end of piety. The whole reason and aim of the new administration is recovery to loyalty, and confirming all who are loyal. At no time has it released any subject from the obligations of perpetual allegiance, or withdrawn ultimately the old penalty, if a return to allegiance is not gained.

If then, in any case, this provision of mercy through an equivalent substitution fail to reclaim, the whole provision is made useless; the substitute wholly discarded; and the subject continues, by his own stubbornness, still under the old penalty. The new provision profits nothing to him, without a return to piety. But this old penalty does not now stand in-

curred as when the sin was solely against law. There is the superadded guilt of mercy rejected, grace despised, God's sacrifice reproached and dishonored. The impiety is far more daring and obstinate than that which slighted God's will as expressed only in his law. The condemnation must in the same way be aggravated. The impiety is greatly augmented, and thus, ethically, the ultimate punishment is proportionally enhanced.

3. *The one plan of gracious substitution must preclude all further gracious interposition.* We have seen that there may be equivalent substitution for penalty, but we now show that there can be no new substitution for the rejected vicarious substitute. An adequate substitution for penalty involves principles which must make that one exclusive and ultimate. Penalty for piety's sake may not be transmuted for something which may itself have its substitute. In the one sacrifice of God rejected, there "remaineth no more sacrifice for sin"; for such tampering with both justice and grace would take away all veneration for either, and render all reclaiming of the sinner, and confirming of the righteous, the more hopeless. Mercy would become a weakness, and grace capricious, and the plan to reclaim would defeat its own end by destroying all its influence for piety, and directly encouraging delay and perseverance in transgression.

One plan of substitution, both on the ground of the nature of the sacrifice and of the influence upon piety, must exhaust the gracious provisions of sovereignty, and exclude all further overtures of reconciliation. An ethical barrier would lie against more than one equivalent substitution for legal penalty, inasmuch as both justice and grace would be thus degraded.

4. *It must secure the permanent piety of the reclaimed.* Mercy should not rejoice against judgment, only to have judgment again triumph over mercy. If God had not foreseen the results which might be secured by such gracious interposition, there would have been no wisdom in bringing in the gracious administration. If it did not secure that many should become again

loyal, it would have behooved him not to have introduced it. The end of piety would not thus have been promoted, but hindered.

And if the perpetuation of such reformed sinners in their loyalty were not secured, and their voluntary service of God henceforth a certainty to God, the same ethical regard to his own excellency must have prevented the entering on an expedient for piety's sake, which it was foreseen would only at last mock the mercy that had adopted it.

---

Such are the leading *Principles* of all Divine legislation ; the specific *Duties*, which might be determined from them, are better found in the revealed commandments divinely proclaimed.

## THIRD DIVISION.

---

### PARENTAL GOVERNMENT.

---

#### CHAPTER I.

##### THE FAMILY.

UNDER the head of Authority, Family Government is put last, because it combines in itself both the legality and loyalty which are distributively in civil and divine legislation, and is on that account better examined after attending to them, though its end is preliminary and preparatory to them both.

By *the Family* is meant those habitually resident in the same dwelling ; including parents, children, and servants. It is the most important institution in the social being of any community. It is in some respects the foundation of the state, and the source of that nurture and discipline which is to prepare for the duties of this life and the retributions of eternity.

The Family is itself a distinct organic community, having within itself its own separate rights, wants, and interests ; its own authority, polity, and duties ; and society is not so much an aggregation of individuals, as a composition of many distinct families of blended sympathies and dependencies. The parents, as the social head of the family, have the right of authority, and the children and servants are in their respective stations the subjects of this domestic polity.

The parental right to authority is not constituted in the simple fact of the parental relation, but in the qualification from maturity

of wisdom, natural affection, dignity, and honor, which is relatively in the parent, and which best secures the attainment of the ends of family government. If the parent be quite intellectually imbecile, or very morally depraved, the government of the household should come under a different guardianship. But ordinarily the characteristics of the parental relation indicate the possession of those attributes which will best attain the ends of domestic authority.

The end of parental authority is two-fold, and designed to fit the subjects of it for the two respective governments under which it ultimately issues them, — the *Civil* and the *Divine* legislation. The parent stands to the child, in an important respect, both as the state and as God. The magistrate and the Deity both govern the child through the parent,—in early years, especially, almost wholly so ; and the parent is directly responsible both to the state and to God for the administration of the entire domestic polity, as it bears ultimately upon these two sovereignties under which the family subjects are soon to be introduced. The fulfilment of the duties, in the end of one, will not compensate for any neglect in those which relate to the end of the other. The nurture which trains for God will, it is true, also prepare for the state, inasmuch as a loyal subject of God's government will necessarily be a good citizen ; but God will excuse no parent, who has trained his child to legal obedience, if he has not also taught him loyally to obey God from love.

There may be mentioned another end of family government, in the *peace of the family itself*, while the members of it continue their residence together. This will really be of precisely the same nature as the end of civil government. The family is, in this view, a little state ; and the individual choices of its members must be controlled by a regard to the righteous choice of the whole, or, which is the same thing, the family freedom. The parent is bound to see that one member does not, in the

execution of his choices, encroach upon the rights, and thus upon the freedom of another ; and must exercise his sovereignty to preserve the freedom of all from the encroachment of any. This regard to the end of the family freedom will be fulfilled in mere legality. If the child keeps the family peace, merely from fear, this will be all that the family, as such, can demand ; and thus the securing of this comes wholly within the same culture, that the preparation of the coming responsibility to the state demands, — viz : mere legality. But the consideration, that the child is also to be trained for God, will oblige the parent to feel, that though obedience from fear may secure the peace of the family, yet such culture only cannot answer all the parental responsibility. The parent is bound to insist on the child's obedience, not merely through fear, but also to teach the child that he should obey from filial love. Legality, even in mere family interests, will not be enough ; the parent must inculcate the principle of loyalty, and be satisfied only when he gets obedience from love. His responsibility to the family and to the state could be all answered in securing the legal obedience of fear or reward, but his responsibility to God can be only answered by the nurture which seeks loyal obedience from love.

Thus, this parental authority, in the end of family peace or freedom, resolves itself into the same two principles ; and whether we look at domestic authority, as in the end of family peace, or as training for the state, or for the government of God, it gives in all only the two ends of freedom and piety, — the obedience of legality and loyalty. We may thus put the three within the last two only.

It may be of interest to consider that obedience from filial love, and the respect and reverence rendered to a parent which is due to the dignity and authority of the parental standing, give that which may be properly characterized as piety. *Æneas* had the epithet of *pious*, from his reverent regard and care for his

father Anchises ; and the household deities, which the Latins venerated and even adored, were but the shrines of their departed ancestors. It is obedience from love ; reverence for the dignity and majesty of rightful authority ; cordial response to the claims of respect and veneration ; and is thus the essence of religion. It becomes truly a worship, when the confidence and reverence is directed to the Divine Spirit. But the truly loyal spirit of a child fits for the transfer of allegiance from a father's authority to God's ; and the spirit that has truly obeyed a father, from love to his authority, is a pious spirit, and in the first full view of God's authority and majesty will, in cordial loyalty, bow down with reverence, and lovingly serve and adore.

That the parental government has this two-fold end is quite manifest, further, from the very nature of the case in the civil point of view, and from God's direct revelation in the Divine. Such is the direct bearing of all family authority and discipline upon the interest of the state, that the parent ought ethically to stand responsible to the law for his administration of this government. The citizen must come up into the state through the family. No other guardianship for childhood and youth can take the place of this training, in general, so well as the parent ; and the infantile and youthful training must precede the adult responsibilities of the citizen, and the state take the consequences of the family training in the characteristics of its citizens, from generation to generation ; the parent thus ought to have the duties to the state in his design through all his culture ; and the state ought, for the freedom of its perpetuated generations, to guard the family authority, and hold its administration perpetually subordinate and subservient to its higher claims.

The same train of argument would also show, from the nature of the case, that God must hold the parental authority responsible to him for the training of its members ; but we have abundant declarations in the revelation he has made to this purport, and to which the Christian moralist may go direct for the proof.

Taking these ends in combination, as that which is to be attained in the institution of the family, and which is established from the nature of the case, the claims of morality, and the revelation of God ; we must in this light determine the principles which lie at the foundation of all parental government, and the duties embraced within the domestic relations.

These may all be included within the following topics :

1. MARRIAGE.
2. THE DUTIES OF PARENTS.
3. THE DUTIES OF CHILDREN.
4. THE DUTIES OF SERVANTS.

---

## CHAPTER II.

### MARRIAGE.

*MARRIAGE is the union of one man and one woman in exclusive cohabitation for life.* It is the source of all the domestic relations, and must be determined, in its nature, rights, and duties, by the grand ends of the domestic institution itself. It is not a mere private and special agreement between the parties, and thus only a particular contract ; its end and importance determine for it universal rules, and thus make it to be a public institution, and so far as God has established it, a Divine institution. It is indispensable to the continuance and elevation of human society, from generation to generation.

The ground for the institution of marriage is found in the constitution of human nature. The spiritual life is so modified in the sexes that neither is entire in itself. A state of celibacy is a state of incomplete being, and the soul of neither the man nor the woman is satisfied except as the two become blended in one. The essential marriage tie is a spiritual union. The

constitutional propensities, also, both of natural desire and social affection, which find their end in the mutual intercourse of the sexes, need to be regulated, chastened, and balanced by some permanent ordinance. The marriage bond refines, directs, and tranquilizes all these propensities, so that society is secured from all the irregularities and disturbances of their passionate gratification. Mutual confidence is imparted ; tenderness and sympathy are induced ; feelings and interests become identified ; and the husband and wife are no longer merely two persons of different sexes, but conjunct in one spirit. A new charm is added to life ; and while every joy is augmented in the mutual participation, every sorrow also is softened in reciprocal support. This balance to all constitutional propensity keeps its regulated action upon the successive generations of youth who come up under this influence ; their habits and expectations are formed under it, and they look forward, with hopeful anticipation, to such happy selection and union of kindred hearts as the most interesting and important event in life. A national sentiment is thus created and cherished which works perpetually in society to give security and serenity to domestic life, and the opportunity to attain the great ends of the family state, in the nurture of their children for the duties of the state and the service of God.

These children are a common object of affection to the parents, binding both in stronger conjugal attachment ; and the education and discipline of the child is also a matter of common care and anxiety, awakening new sympathies and hopes ; and thus the family institution comes to be the strongest, the dearest, the most effective spring to human activity that social life possesses.

But while the ground for such an institution is in the constitution of human nature itself, the establishment and ratification of it must be given in some public ordinance. Nature lays the ground and reveals the reason for marriage, but some positive authority must legally ratify and guard it. When a selected

application of these desires and affections has been voluntarily reciprocated by the parties, then must some acknowledged authority interpose, and by some formal ceremony solemnize the nuptials. The public have rights and interests in it as really as the parties, and this official public ratification is necessary for the public notification, the public assent, the perpetual public regard ; and thus the preserved safety for all the parties in this new relation.

For the greater prominence and emphasis, the particulars which enter into this definition and description of the ground and nature of marriage may be here more specially enumerated :

1. *The sexual desires and affections must be exclusively directed to one person.* The choice which fixes upon the object of conjugal affection must include one person of the other sex alone. A true marriage can include the union of one man and one woman only.

2. *The choices must be reciprocal.* Both must be each other's choice ; that is, each must choose, and each choose reciprocally the other. No choice of one alone, however ardent, can make "of the twain one."

3. *It should be a free choice.* Each party is a voluntary agent, alike free to bestow or withhold these affections. The conduct of one party may give a moral claim to esteem or gratitude from the other, but nothing can lay the other under obligation to conjugal affection, except a personal assent and promise. All prudential motives should be regarded ; but in view of whatever motives, the asking and assenting must be alike free.

4. *The commitment must be for life.* Inviolability is demanded, until death stop all exercise of earthly affection, or remove its object. If any thing but death come in to sunder the marriage bond, it has been over the broken marriage vow, that knows no moral rupture but by death.

5. *There must be an official ratification.* The leaving of father and mother and cleaving to each other must be exhibited in some public formal manner, in which the authority that establishes the ordinance is recognized as speaking out in ratification. No private agreement can confer either the rights or the obligations of marriage.

With this extended statement of what marriage is, we proceed to confirm it in the light of the ends of marriage. This will be done in several distinct sections.

SECTION I. *The authority which should settle the marriage institution.* There are public ends which forbid that marriage should be a special contract between the parties alone, and thus there must be some positive general regulations by authority which shall make it a public institution binding upon society. Whence, then, the authority on which the institution must rest for its validity?

One end is found in the interest of the state. The civil sovereignty has the right to control marriage for the sake of public freedom. No parties have the right to so cohabit as to disturb the rights of the public. In order that family government and discipline may be the most beneficial to the interests of the state, the state may control marriage contracts the same as any other; and since, in the nature of the case, promiscuous and unregulated cohabitation cannot consist with public freedom, the state authority must make positive regulations for all marriage unions. The authority of the state is valid against all choices of the parties.

But provision is to be made for another end than civil freedom. Marriage should be as truly modified by a regard to piety as to the ends of civil polity. God, so to speak, has interests in the results of family government certainly no less than the state. He has the right to control marriage for the ends of piety, as truly as the state has for the ends of freedom; and thus the authority of both the state and God are good against any

choices of individuals. No persons have the right to so use marriage as to compromit the interests of either liberty or piety. The only difficulty, therefore, in the marriage institution, so far as it becomes a question of morals, is in harmonizing the civil and the Divine regulations.

And this case stands precisely like all matters of civil and religious polity. The civil authority is not to be brought in for the restraint or control of religious faith and conscience. It has its own end, and thus its own jurisdiction. But God's end is higher, and his authority supreme over all civil authority ; and when he legislates for piety's sake it is always "the higher law," and binds the Christian nation in making laws and institutions. If the nation disregard this higher law of God, the contest is between the state and heaven ; and if individual conscience is thus put between two conflicting authorities, it is bound not to violate the Divine, but to take any penal consequences that it must from the human. The ethical principle is, that God may legislate, in marriage as in any other case, for piety's sake, over the state. Civil authority is ethically a nullity when it contradicts Divine authority. The institution of the Sabbath, or of any sacrament, is precisely as the institution of marriage. As a religious ordinance, it is wholly from God's authority, and civil polity should conform to it in such a way that any citizen can obey both. If the state polity, in the estimation of the citizen, conflicts with religion, he must obey God and let civil government do what it will.

In reality, the two ends of freedom and of piety can never clash. That family arrangement which subserves piety best will also subserve liberty best.

SECTION II. *Breach of marriage promise.* A mutual promise of marriage, between a man and woman, is a betrothal only, and not marriage. It is a promise, more or less sacred according to the manner of making it, at some future time to enter the marriage relation. It confers none of the rights, and

imposes none of the duties of marriage. A breach of this promise is no violation of the marriage covenant.

In proportion to the interests involved, however, is such a promise strongly binding. No parties are at liberty thus to plight their troth, but upon the most serious and satisfactory reasons. When done, it must bind the conscience under obligations that only the most weighty considerations can justify in seeking to dissolve. Specially is this the fact on the part of the man, as the receding from the promise must probably affect the woman the most severely. If affection has changed, or circumstances thrown great obstacles in the way, it may be a justification for a mutual release ; but one party may not withdraw without the consent of the other, righteously, except in the full conviction that the consummation of the marriage, in that case, would be an immorality, and only by all indemnity as far as practicable.

SECTION III. *Polygamy.* The original institution of marriage, by God, was with the first of the human race, and united one man with one woman. This may be seen, in the nature of the case, to be the most congenial to humanity. The spiritual incompleteness of sex demands that the husband and wife become spiritually one, and no such blending in unity can be possible in a marriage at the same time with more than one. The peace of the family will be more secure, and the piety of the children better promoted. This was the consideration that induced God to institute marriage. He made one woman only, though he had the residue of the creating spirit and might have made more ; but he made one, "that he might seek a godly seed." MAL. ii. 15. The re-enactment of the law of marriage, by Jesus Christ, is of the same purport. "And he answered and said unto them, have ye not read that he who made them, at the beginning made them male and female. And said, for this cause, shall a man leave father and mother, and shall cleave to his wife : and they two shall be one flesh? Wherefore they are no more two, but one flesh. Wherefore what God hath joined together, let not

man put asunder." MATTH. xix. 4 to 6. And so also with the Apostle: "Know ye not, brethren (for I speak to them that know the law), that the law hath dominion over a man as long as he liveth? For the woman who hath a husband is bound by the law to her husband so long as he liveth; but if the husband is dead, she is loosed from the law of her husband. So then, if while her husband liveth, she is married to another man, she shall be called an adulteress; but if her husband is dead, she is free from that law; so that she is no adulteress, though she be married to another man." ROM. vii. 1 to 3. If polygamy was practised by the Patriarchs with God's permission, it still had no Divine sanction; God's legislation has been always against it, even when for other reasons he has not enforced it.

The end of all human government, also, demands that one man be united only to one woman. No nation has permitted polygamy, but at the expense of many evils to the community, and the sacrifice of many things vitally connected with the public welfare. The true interests of the family, and through it the true interests of the state, can be secured only by exclusive single cohabitation. The state, therefore, as rigidly excludes polygamy as does the revelation of God. Neither piety nor freedom can be best subserved by it. The great fact in nature, that from generation to generation the law of perpetuation in the human race keeps the numbers of the sexes nearly equal, the slight advantage of numbers being on the male side, as the more exposed to casualties, abundantly teaches what God ordains in marriage, and what states should regard. Such a fact in nature makes the political toleration of polygamy immoral.

SECTION IV. *Incest.* The law of God has prohibited marriage within certain degrees of consanguinity. The Mosaic code is given in Lev. xviii, 6 to 18. The general prohibition will extend in the direct line of descent indefinitely, and in collateral degrees of kindred to all such as are brothers or sisters of the parents, or among brothers or sisters themselves. And

this reaches to the same relations through marriage as by blood. The much vexed question arising from the sixteenth verse, whether a man may marry the sister of a deceased wife, need not be here considered, as it is rather a question of casuistry in reference to whether the fact comes under the principle. In other cases, beside those given in this chapter, God has regulated or prohibited marriage, though not on the ground of incest. An Israelite was not to marry a heathen, *Deut.* vii. 3; nor a believer to marry an unbeliever, *1 Cor.* vii. 39; *2 Cor.* vi. 14; and certain offices of particular sanctity modified the law of marriage. *Lev.* xxi. 7, 13, 14; *Ezek.* xliv. 22; *1 Tim.* iii. 2 and 12; *Tit.* i. 6. The new Testament, also, in a single case, refers to a case of incest with pointed reprobation. *1 Cor.* v. 1.

In the laws of incest, two things are mainly regarded; one, the deterioration of the race physically, which is found to be the fact when the parents are within certain degrees of near kin by blood; the other is of a moral nature, and would repress all sexual inclinations in such cases as from family connection there must be daily intimate intercourse. On both of these accounts the laws of incest have a basis in morality, and on the last account they apply to relationship by marriage, where there is no consanguinity.

Without exactly settling the line within which the marriage is incestuous, other than by an application of the above reasons for prohibiting such marriages, and observing that all nations have had occasion for such legislation, though differing in the degrees of kindred prohibited, we may apprehend that there is the same ground for civil, as for Divine enactments, against incestuous marriages. The state has important interests involved as well as the church, and freedom as well as piety is endangered by the union of parties of too near a relationship. The practice would punish itself in its own consequences, but civil polity and religion would be both injured, and thus prohibition under positive penalties should be enforced.

SECTION V. *Divorce.* The considerations already given show that marriage should not be viewed in the same ethical light as private contracts. The freedom and the piety of the race are so directly involved in the fact of marriage, that both the state and God must legislate in the regulation of it. This is of the highest necessity in reference to the right of divorce. No matter how inconvenient and irksome the restraints in individual cases, the end of public freedom and piety should be nevertheless maintained.

The original intention of marriage, in its institution by God, was manifestly designed for perpetuity, and to hold the parties in union during life. Hence the expression of unbroken union,—forsaking all other, the dearest connections, and *cleaving* to the wife, and the twain becoming *one flesh*. No divorce was contemplated in this language, but by the death of one of the parties. This is further confirmed by our Saviour's comment. "Moses, because of the hardness of your hearts, suffered you to put away your wives, but from the beginning it was not so." MATT. xix. 8.

The permission in the Mosaic law, to divorce the wife under certain regulations, is expressly put upon the perverseness of man, and thus the civil law forebore to enforce the righteous principle, since in that state of depravity the nation could not bear it. The tyranny of the man, with his hard heart, would have made the condition of the woman worse in perpetual union than in regulated divorce. This was man's fault, and thus no annulling of the marriage institution, as God had given it, and as man ought to use it. And thus Christ cut short the permission to divorce, and put marriage upon the original, and the perpetually righteous foundation: inviolability but by death. One cause only is admitted as a justification of divorce, and that an already sundering the nuptial tie by the adulterous infidelity of one of the parties. "I say unto you, whosoever shall put away his wife, *except for fornication*, and shall marry another,

committeth adultery, and whoever marrieth her who is put away, committeth adultery." MATTH. xix. 9. Neither the state nor religion could profit by legalizing the connection, and imposing an obligation of nuptial rights and duties upon one, when the other went after fornication. Morality justifies such a case of divorce on the part of the faithful, but this is the sole reason that the end of piety can allow as an occasion for the dissolution of the marriage bond. God has legislated emphatically and finally in this matter, and to the eye of reason in the best manner for the end of piety.

Civil society has also been regulated in this matter by the state, and in various ways and for varied reasons the right of divorce has been granted. Wilful desertion for a considerable time, neglect to provide, great cruelty, flagitious crimes, imbecility, and sometimes incorrigible contrariety of temperament and disposition, have been made state reasons for divorce. The ends of piety will always be found in full conformity with the end of civil polity, and God's legislation in any matter, where the same can apply to state purposes, will be a fair index of what is most for public freedom, and thus the institutions of God and of the state will be concurrent. The further the state deviates in the law of divorce from the law of God, the less will it subserve the end of state government, and the only apology for the state not to adopt the law of God, must be that which God gives for Moses' law, viz.: the depravity of the people.

It may sometimes be that the state of public morals will not bear such civil laws as would be demanded by the highest piety; and thus in divorce, as in the case of intemperance or slavery, the state may be forced to endure the evil, which from the strength of depravity it cannot repress. This will not justify the political evil, but only throws the burden of responsibility from the legislator on to the hard-heartedness of the community. The inability to make and sustain the right law may

sometimes be the very occasion for perpetuating the political immorality, and the state be in that desperate condition where the sickness of the moral constitution will not bear the remedies which are necessary for its recovery. There can then be no other alternative but ultimate dissolution. In all cases, where the political regulation admits practices at war with God's regulations for piety, the duty of every good man is, never to avail himself of the political license, but live up to the higher law, and thus put and keep as much virtue into the political constitution as possible.

When any cause makes the marriage union a hindrance to its own end in freedom and piety, there may, by mutual consent, or, in extreme cases, at the will of one party, be a separation *from bed and board*; but this will not open the way to another nuptial engagement. So, also, where moral impediments existed before marriage, though not apprehended until afterwards, the parties are justified in such separation, inasmuch as continued co-habitation would perpetuate the immorality. If the immorality were of such a nature as to vitiate the legality of the marriage union, then has the whole marriage been a nullity, and must be treated as void.

Woman may be often much oppressed by an ill-assorted connection, but an easy dissolution of the marriage bond will ultimately far more enslave and degrade the sex. When a pure-minded woman allies herself to the man of her choice, it must be with mutual pledges of eternal fidelity. Take away her confidence that the union is indissoluble but by death, and the solemn vow becomes only a base assent to temporary prostitution, and the soul is not wedded though the body be surrendered. An attempt to attain emancipation for woman from the hard lot of an ill-assorted marriage, by an easy dissolution of the nuptial bond, must augment the general evil. The husband and wife must be one in sympathy, in will, and moral personality; holding all interests and anxieties in perfect transparency to each

other ; and any thing that contravenes this will necessarily degrade woman from the high sphere in which a righteous marriage contemplates her. As long as the Christian ordinance of marriage is maintained, woman cannot become a mere servile and sensual appendage to man. If the state grant divorces only in view of personal inconveniences, and special hardship, overlooking the public end of marriage, the few will be relieved at the expense of the many, and both man and woman become morally debased.

---

### CHAPTER III.

#### DUTIES OF PARENTS.

THE whole family government is in the hands of the parents, and they are directly responsible to the state and to God for the manner in which they administer it.

The end of family government, in its bearing upon politics and religion, indicates directly the duties imposed. The household is to be trained for the state and for heaven, and the parents are charged with this responsible commission. The duties are mainly disciplinary. The family is but a nursery for higher and broader spheres of action. In it are to be planted the seeds, and there are to be nurtured the germs, which are to have their full development and bear their fruit in future years and in other worlds. A regard is to be had for the peace and freedom of the family, while its members continue in the paternal mansion, and therefore much is demanded in securing a quiet, orderly, and happy home ; but the subjects of the family government are supposed to spend only the few years of early life under its training, and then, as adults, come under the immediate jurisdiction of the state for life, and through life and in

eternity come also under the direct authority of God, and receive from him the retributions he shall award for personal character and conduct.

The authority of the father and of the mother are concurrent, and the members of the household are as much bound by the separate commands of the one as of the other. There is no difference of end, and no conflict of interest in the parental authority, but both concur in one end and to the advancement of one interest. If, then, any collision of parental authority occur between that of the father and that of the mother, it must arise from the ignorance or the selfishness of one party, and not from any legitimate contrariety in parental authority itself. In an unfortunate, and from some source, wrong clashing of commands, there must of course be some ultimate sovereignty; and the reason of the case, the law of the land, and the law of God, put this supremacy of family sovereignty in the hands of the father. In the case of separate commands, the children and servants are bound to obey both, but in any direct contradiction of commands, that of the man is paramount. The duties of each are similar, inasmuch as the ends of each are the same and the authority concurrent. The difference of duties is found only in those things where the action of one can gain the common end more effectually than the other. The marriage union supposes that the authority will always be one, inasmuch as the husband and wife in marriage become one.

It is in this view that the wife acts through the husband, in those particulars where the agency of only one can be permitted. In personal acts, involving personal merit and demerit, the husband and wife are wholly separate, both in the law of the land and of God. One is not held responsible for the other, and, of course, one does not act in the other. In all cases where one only can act, the husband's action is alone known. Thus, in the domestic priesthood, the husband and wife cannot each offer the family sacrifice, but the wife acts in the public homage

rendered by the husband. There are other cases in which the rights and interests of the wife, as separate from her husband, may make her conjunct, or her separate agency proper and imperative, according to circumstances. In the transfer of property, which may involve her interests distinct from his, or in her religious profession and communion, her separate voluntary act may be ethically required.

The grand principle by which to determine all such cases is that of the unity of the parties in marriage ; where one only should act in view of the end of marriage, the wife is known as acting only in the husband ; but where the end of marriage does not demand this single action, the interest of the wife distinct from the husband tolerates her separate action ; and where the responsibilities of personality remain which cannot be merged and lost in any union, the separate action of both is ethically required. In this sense, even the union of marriage may lay personal responsibilities upon the husband in relation to the wife, which he only can sustain, and in this point of view he has the ethical right to restrain the wife. He may be liable for her debts, or for her injuries to others in slander or violence, and should have a constraining authority ; and his duties as head of the household, including both wife and children, must be modified by such responsibilities. The peace of the family, and the political and religious ends of family government, cannot otherwise be attained.

We have thus the principle of concurrent authority in the family government, except in some extreme cases ; and this in connection with the end of the family organization will determine parental duty.

The Duties of Parents may be comprised in the following particulars :

1. *Support and maintenance of the children during their minority.* Infancy is helpless, and through the stages of childhood, youth, and on to maturity, there is dependence upon

parental support, though constantly diminishing in degree to the period for manly independence to begin. Nature more specially throws the infant upon the mother, and thus claims from her the chief support and care. The more special charge of the father increases with the growing ripeness to maturity. The parents are in this way both called, in their distinctive times and degrees, to minister to the support of their children.

This support and maintenance is demanded, in view of the end of the family state. If children do not find support from others they must die, and neither the ends of patriotism nor religion be attained. The parents are the natural providers for the wants of their children ; and God's design, that they should do this, is manifest in the constitutional impulses of parental feeling. Those to whom God has given this natural affection, and not strangers, should provide for the family wants. It is only in the death or disability of the parents that the support of the child should rest on the care of others.

The quality of the supplies, and the amount furnished, should correspond in a degree with the parents' rank and wealth. It would be an immorality for those parents who are poor and lowly to attempt furnishing their children with the supplies of the rich and elevated ; and it would be an equal immorality for the latter to give to their children only such supplies as might come from the former. Equality of condition can nowhere be permanently maintained ; if all were alike to-day, they would again become unlike to-morrow ; and the support demanded by morality must have regard to the circumstances of the parent.

2. *Care should be taken to secure a healthy and vigorous constitution.* Many weakly and sickly constitutions are hereditary, and often the fault of one or both of the parents, as the consequence of their own carelessness or vice. The direction, thus, would demand of all persons to so regard their own health that their children need not suffer by it. But the direct care for healthy physical development is in reference to the children

when born. The strongest may be made weak by a careless, and the weakest may be made stronger by a careful parent. Much of human imbecility, pain, and premature death, is the immediate result of parental ignorance, negligence, or direct wickedness. The child may be ruined in health by either too much hardship or too much indulgence, and the parent is bound to guard against all extremes.

It becomes, thus, the duty of all parents to attend to the entire habits of life in their children. Their method of dress, food, exercise, sleep, and all their employments, act upon the physical constitution ; and if this be neglected in their indulgence or privation, it will necessarily suffer thereby. Whatever weakens the constitution interferes with the right of the state ; and though a sick man may be as pious as a healthy one, yet he has not the occasion for doing so much for general piety, and therefore the parent who has brought sickness and feebleness upon his child, through his fault, has also interfered with the claims of God. The end of family culture, both in politics and religion, demands the securing of as robust and vigorous a constitution as may be. The whole parental discipline should be modified by such important considerations.

3. *Mental cultivation.* The mind has its own native rudiments, and such only can be made to develop themselves to their maturity. But this growth to maturity, of what is in the mind, depends upon favoring outward conditions, and thus upon the culture and discipline bestowed. Little can be done for the good of the state, or the honor of God, by the ignorant and weak-minded ; and the whole end of family government may easily be defeated by a faulty or a neglected education.

The parents are at first directly responsible for the training of the opening mental faculties of their children ; and then, in more advanced stages, they are responsible for the instructors employed and the advantages given. A thorough education is not only a fortune to the child, but a price put into his hand whereby he may serve both his country and his God.

4. *Habits of industry and economy.* Every child should be made to know the value of labor, of time, and of money. Without this, he will habituate himself to squander them all, for no profit to himself, his country, or religion. The most wealthy parent sins against all these interests in allowing his child to grow up in habits of indolence, dissipation, and prodigality. It is not merely the danger to that child's own want and poverty, from idle and dissolute habits, but the very end for which God has given children to the parents is thus frustrated. They are useless to the state and to the church, and neither man nor God gets any good of them, except in setting them as a warning to others. If the parents through fondness, carelessness, or too busy occupation in other matters, have neglected to train up their children in habits of industry and sobriety, they are guilty of gross parental delinquency.

5. *Counsel and assistance upon their independent entrance on the business of life.* There must be a period for minority to cease, and independent activity and business to begin. As this period of full age approaches, parental care should be modified to the growing experience and wisdom of the child, and he be taught to rely more upon his own judgment, and avail himself of his own resources.

But at this period of adult age, and entering upon the responsibilities of his majority, the child has peculiar claims upon the parent ; and whether son or daughter, the most prompt and effective assistance is here needed. Parental counsel can never come under more affecting and encouraging circumstances.

Secular influence and pecuniary assistance should be granted, especially to sons, as the parent can afford, and the condition of the child needs. It is a violation of a moral claim, if, for their own selfishness or indulgence, the parents withhold assistance in this crisis of their child's history. A lavish provision and expensive outfit is not demanded in any case of such beginning experience ; and, if bestowed, will pretty surely do more hurt

to the child than good ; but the assistance should be such as will encourage, and yet prompt to greater industry and frugality. The boy passes into the man, and all the former discipline of the parent, to prepare him for his place in society and his worship of God, is now to come forth in actual engagedness. As he steps over the domestic threshhold, to go out among strangers in the social world, he never more needs the parental blessing and counsel ; and in his individual destitution of all accumulated capital, he can be never more in want of judicious help from the patrimonial resources. His influence for the state and for God will thus be best subserved.

6. *Over the whole period of minority there should be direct training for the state.* The parental duty towards the state is not fulfilled by that culture and discipline which enables and induces the child to take care of himself, and sends him out, or sets him up in business, on his own account. This would be acting as if the parent had no higher responsibility than the animal,—merely to propagate his kind, and rear his offspring to do the same, and then die. Man lives for ends beyond himself, and thus beyond what would be gained in rearing up another man merely that he should take care of himself. Society cannot exist, and grow in moral and intellectual elevation, and thus the race make progress from generation to generation, without the state and the action of its sovereign authority. And such state action can only be in constraint, except as the citizens are intelligent and virtuous. No man helps his fellows in elevation and refinement above his own standard ; and thus no man works, in his place in the state, for any political profit, without having already become himself enlightened and righteous. And to train to this capability of service, for public freedom's sake, is one great part of the end for which the family organization exists.

Every parent is bound, thus, to keep his eye upon the state, in all his government, and directly educate for its wants. This is done by educating the child for his own highest interests,

and also, so far as his regularity, industry, and frugality go, to help the social world about him. But he must be trained to patriotism other and higher than as his country is helped collaterally by his helping himself. His country's freedom is an end of life, and he must be taught to make sacrifices for it. Not to seek first his own, and his country only in benefiting himself; but himself, a servant to his country, for his country's sake. And with this patriotic spirit, he needs to have been taught how he may advance his country in civilization and the public freedom. He should know her constitution and her laws; her relation to other nations, and her past history; and no parent has done his duty as a parent to his child, if he has not cultivated both this patriotic spirit, and the faculties which are to carry it out in action through all his political life.. The family is bound to be directly subservient to the state.

7. *There must also be direct training for God and heaven.* God has given the child into the parents' hand, as the highest of all ends, to train in piety for his sake. The end of the family is to teach the child reverence for God, and a sense of dependence upon him, and direct prayer to him and worship of him. The child may grow up irreverent and impious, but not without the neglect and fault of the parent. If by both precept and example the child from infancy is nurtured in true piety, the effect will be seen in early years, and even to old age he will not depart from the way he should go.

This is due, not only as thereby gaining the heavenly reward to the child, and thus the prudential consideration of parental care for the child's good; but true piety is loyalty,—obedience of God from love to God,—and thus such training is due in the Divine right; an end God instituted the family to attain; and therefore of every family where it is neglected, he may make the righteous charge of direct robbery of his own right, and call to account, for eternity, every parent whose child's piety has been neglected. The family is God's ordinance for piety's sake.

## CHAPTER IV.

## DUTIES OF CHILDREN.

THE duties of parents will determine very much the duties of children, inasmuch as they are mostly reciprocal. The authority on one side is met by corresponding obligation on the other, and for the same end that the parent should administer the family government, should the child also be completely subject to it. The duties of the parent terminate in the state and the kingdom of God, and the obligation is clear and full upon the family-head to train the children for meeting the claims and responsibilities of both ; and in the same way the obligation is upon the children to conform to this parental culture and control, and thus secure that the end in view shall, in their case, be consummated.

A few instances of the more general and prominent duties of children will be sufficient to be here noted, and all others will be indicated thereby or included therein.

1. *Prompt subjection to parental authority.* This is unqualified in reference to all commands that are within the parental authority legitimately. The parent has the proper place of sovereignty, and thus the right to command ; and when the commandment is within the proper lines, nothing can release the child from the obligation of subjection.

In the early years of childhood, this must be much more unquestioned, in respect to the rectitude of the command, than when advancing to maturity. The child is not competent, except in extreme cases, to determine the consistency of the parent's government ; and his conscience and conduct should, except in such extreme cases, be controlled by the will of the parent. When approaching nearer maturity, the judgment be-

comes more clear and sound, and the conscience more enlightened ; and there may not unfrequently come up cases of casuistry, in reference to the rectitude of a parent's command, and thus also in reference to the morality of filial obedience, which may occasion much doubt and perplexity.

The principle, in all cases, is seen in the end of parental government. What goes to the necessary peace of the family, or is accordant with the rights of the state, and the claims of God, will always be legitimately binding. But should the parent's commands invade the rights of the family, the state, or God, they are a nullity, and their fulfilment would be immoral. No child may consciously deal a blow at the peace of the family, the liberty of the state, or the purity of religion, because a parent assumes to command him. But within parental jurisdiction, parental authority is unqualified. It is not necessary that reasons for the command be at all given ; the positive authority, in the parent's will, is sufficient to hold the conscience.

The external obedience, which may be rendered from fear of punishment, may keep the peace of the family from all disturbance ; and this spirit of legality will also stand in the future relations of civil polity ; but this cannot meet the full claim to the subjection of the child and obedience to the parent. There is another and a higher end of piety to be attained, and this demands a heart of loyalty. Filial piety is obedience to the father from love, and religious piety is obedience to God from love, and the child's duty is not done in any mere legality, but must come upon the ground of complete loyalty.

2. *A meek and docile spirit.* The whole of parental duty is not in exercising positive authority, and securing action by commands ; much instruction is to be given, and a very varied discipline to be administered, which is not merely legal. Law itself is a teacher as well as a commander. The end of patriotism and of piety cannot be reached without much teaching, and a varied, long-continued nurture.

On this account, the duty of every child is to maintain perpetually a teachable frame of mind. There must be the readiness to gain knowledge, to know duty, and also to conform to the truth known; a mind soft and yielding, and thus freely susceptible to the plastic hand of parental discipline. A stubborn, froward, unyielding spirit in any child, aside from all overt action, is a gross immorality. The family peace must be often disturbed, the end of the state cannot be subserved, and much less the end of piety, by any hardness of heart or wilfulness of disposition. Under the Jewish law, the punishment of a froward and stubborn son was terribly severe. DEUT. xxi. 18 to 21. The abhorrence of God towards such impiety, in all cases, is not probably too strongly expressed in this case.

3. *Respect and reverence.* In the nature of the case, high regard and honor are due to those from whom, under God, life has been given and sustained. But the claim is not merely from nature. The life is given, and the living being reared in the family, that as a man he may be matured and fitted for the citizen and the Christian. He must come to bow reverently before the sceptre of civil sovereignty, and religiously before the throne of God. He is under the culture of the domestic institution, that he may there attain this higher preparation.

And nothing is a better discipline for the perpetual respect of the majesty of law, and the religious homage of Jehovah, than that filial reverence and honor which is claimed of all the children in the family toward their common parent. Even should the parent be an unworthy member of civil society, it is still the duty of the child to hold the parent in great honor, though obliged to grieve for the degeneracy of the man. All neglect, reproach, or contemptuous speech or look, directed towards a parent, is most undutiful and immoral. The fruitful source of much political evil, and prevalent irreligion, is in an irreverent family.

4. *Kind attention in sickness, and support in old age.* Time

brings round its changes, and a complete revolution is made in the family relations. The sources of support, and the objects of dependence, have reversed their standing to each other ; the child has become a man, and the man has gone back to be a child a second time. There is no nurture and discipline to bring to maturity in second childhood, but a patient and affectionate tending of the decrepitude which has passed maturity, and a reverent watching of the dust which the remnant of vitality yet keeps from crumbling.

With this change of condition, the duty of the children has changed. They are now to manifest the filial piety they have been taught, and to support those limbs which in their own weakness had supported them. The duty of obedience in youth is not more imperative than the soothing attention and care of parents in their declining age. No man can be either a good citizen, or a good Christian, who neglects the helplessness and dependence of an aged parent. Even if remembered neglect, on the part of the parent, be grievous, still the debt of life and ancestral origin remain, and the child is vicious not to pay.

---

## CHAPTER V.

### DUTIES OF BROTHERS AND SISTERS.

THE difference of sex will in some degree modify the duties of the children towards each other ; still the duties of brothers and sisters are so nearly the same, that they may be embraced within the same description, occasionally only demanding a little peculiarity of application.

The parents are more directly responsible to the state, and to God, for the manner of their action upon their children, and the directness with which they apply their authority to the secur-

ing of the ends of civil freedom and religion ; but the same ends are yet to be had in view in determining the duties of the children of the same family, and each child must be held responsible directly to the parents, and ultimately to the state and to heaven, for the manner in which he fulfils these fraternal obligations. The peace and freedom of the family will be more immediately in view, to the children, than the interests of the state and religion ; yet in reality all will be found not only to harmonize together, but that each one must necessarily imply the others.

1. *Mutual affection and kindness.* Neither man nor woman can become good citizens of the state without having cultivated an amiable temper, and an affectionate and kind disposition. And unless this be cherished in the family circle, it is vain to expect it first to spring up among the jarring interests and selfish purposes of public society. And although the temper and the example of the parents will do much to mould and form the dispositions of the children, yet must very much also depend upon the mutual influence which they exert upon each other. Kindness begets kindness in return, and the reciprocal good feeling and kind action, between the children of the same family, perpetuates its peace and happiness. Every hour's indulgence of a spirit of jealousy or envy, of anger or hatred, by any member of the circle of children, brings its discomfort to the whole family ; disquieting and grieving the parents, and provoking to retaliation the other members.

The heart of each is thus to be cultivated, by his or her own care and self-discipline, and its affections cherished directly and constantly towards every brother and sister. A disregard of this perpetual obligation is a great immorality.

2. *A careful regard to each other's feelings and reputation.* The union of the marriage bond is the most cordial, constant, and indissoluble of any relation in life. It is not the tie of blood, but the commingling of personalities in union, from which all

the relationships of consanguinity originate. The family, thus, is made a unit ; and as the husband and wife have become "one flesh," so are their children participants in their blood, and identical in the union. Emphatically, one member cannot suffer, but every other member must suffer with it. The dis-honor of one is an indignity to all, and a pang felt in one bosom must shoot through every heart.

No wound can be so painful here as one inflicted by a brother's or a sister's misdeed. An intended or a careless wrong, from one within the fraternal circle, is far more intolerable than the injuries or the insults of any without the family. Moreover, all the regard to the feeling of others, and the tender care of character and reputation, which is to mark our life amid the duties of citizenship, and in the family of God, are to be first cultivated and practised, in our intercourse with our brethren and sisters, at the common home of us and them.

*3. An acknowledged equality in domestic privileges and prerogatives.* From the very fact of greater age and experience, an elder brother or sister may be justified in counselling and directing the younger, and naturally such will exert a leading influence upon the later-born children. But no disparity of age gives any family superiority or domestic prerogative ; and there should, on this account, be no assumption of authority and participation in the parental control. All such usurpation will beget the evils in the family which flow from unrighteous authority everywhere. Resentment, pertinacious resistance, and direct contempt, will spring up in the oppressed ; and insolence, cruelty, and violence, will manifest themselves on the side of the oppressor ; and in such a family there will never cease to be disunion and dissension.

This is ever the duty of the elder to the younger, that in all their counsel and direction they use only the moral influence of their position, and not arrogate to themselves any of the prerogatives of the parental authority. There is no such authority

legitimately, and all assumption of it is an injury and an immorality.

4. *All cases of collision should be referred to the parental authority.* Every community must have its supreme sovereignty, or the members are left in anarchy. This must be placed in some one known and acknowledged point. In the family, unless very special reasons have come in, this sovereign umpire in all controversy is in the parent. No other has the authority to judge and decide in disputed family rights. The whole training, for a future law-abiding spirit, is in this deference to parental decision and execution.

In all collections of children, offences and collisions will occur. This will not unfrequently be in the children of the same family. Their common umpire is the parent ; and all disputed matters, unadjusted among themselves, must come up confidingly to this tribunal, and the decision be received with ready acquiescence. Such an ultimate tribunal is not to be used by the child as a matter of threatening, to deter or coerce a brother or sister to his or her wishes, against which every parent should scrupulously guard each child ; but the resort is righteously made only for instruction and decision, and to the child this is final when validly given.

5. *All demoralizing example and influence must be sedulously excluded.* The nearness of the connection, and the constancy of the intercourse among brothers and sisters, give necessarily great consequence to all moral influences exerted. One vicious member of a family very soon corrupts others, and very easily leads astray, especially under the advantages of age and more experience. All the ends of the family institution may be defeated and lost by the action upon others of one immoral brother or sister.

The intercourse in the fraternal circle should thus be scrupulously virtuous and pure. Especially should all the example and influence of brothers with sisters be the most delicate, refined,

and elevating. A poison instilled here not only goes through the family, but out into society, and on into eternity. The conversation and reading, the amusements and diversions, the whole communion within the domestic circle, should be as pure as it is intimate and influential.

6. *Their mutual duties, though modified, are not lost by their dispersion from home.* Successively they go out from the common paternal home to find them other homes and originate other families in their own chosen connections. Though these new homes may be at a distance from the old family dwelling, and far from each other, they are still bound by strong ties, and owe to each other many duties. The remembrances of the past go with them, and these tender reminiscences still link them in unity. They are to each other what no other persons on earth can become.

There is thus the duty in each to cherish such remembrances, to seek all favoring opportunities for repeated interviews, to maintain frequent correspondence by letter, and to cease not the habitual remembrance of each in prayer. They have gone, separate, it may be, in society, and are in their own spheres fulfilling to the state the duties to which, in the family, they have been trained ; but as these duties were not the only end of family government, so their performance will not finish all their work. They will come together again before God, to exhibit the issues of that parental culture which cherished their piety and prepared them for heaven.

Great forbearance and self-control is demanded in all distributions of the parental inheritance. Sad occasions here occur for lasting heart-burning and perpetuated alienation, for which no amount of wealth can be a compensation. A family that has been united and happy around the family hearth may thus fall into dissension about its ashes when its fires have gone out. All such occasions for family alienation, given by any of the children through a spirit of selfishness or jealousy, is not only sadly disastrous to all future fraternal peace, but flagrantly vicious.

## CHAPTER VI.

## THE DUTIES OF SERVANTS.

It is often essential to the ends of the family institution that there be other inmates than the parents and children. In various ways services must be performed by such as are taken into the family for that purpose. These persons come thus to sustain a peculiar relation to the natural members of the family, and their duties must be determined from the rights acquired by the head of the household. We have, thus, belonging to the sphere of morality under family government, *the Duty of Servants* to be determined.

Servitude may be either *voluntary* or *involuntary*. These distinctions give peculiarity to the servile relationship, and must necessarily very much modify the ground of obligation and the nature of the duties. We shall thus best apprehend the truth in relation to both by considering each separately.

SECTION I. *Voluntary Servitude.* The whole service in this rests wholly upon contract. It will include all such as come within the family by personal agreement, or by indenture of the parent or guardian. Hired servants, bound servants, indented apprentices, etc., come under this division of voluntary servitude. The principles which govern are the same as in all ordinary contracts, and need only to be simply stated to determine the whole matter of duty.

1. *The entire ground of claim is in the contract.* Nothing may be assumed which is not there specified, or fairly implied in all the circumstances. Established custom may regulate many things which will need no specification in the written contract, but this must be on the ground that each party has understood, and tacitly agreed to, all these matters of custom and precedent. The whole act of claim and obligation was in the

ratifying of the agreement, and nothing back of that can be a source of right or duty.

2. *Each party must be alike free in making the contract.* Whatever circumstances may make such an agreement desirable, on either side, the party must be the one to decide to what extent it is desirable. In relation to the matter of agreement, they come together as equals, and one as free to assent or dissent as the other. Neither can be bound to any thing to which the free assent has not been given.

3. *Neither party can contract in violation of any previous claims.* Whatever obligations either may have been under to the claims of others, these must be regarded in the making of the contract. If any such higher and older obligations are contravened by the later contract, it is to this extent null and void.

4. *The contract equally binds both.* The master may no more violate his stipulations than the servant.

5. *No one has the right to contract to the known injury of the other.* Morality demands the same mutual respect, as men, in making contracts as in all other human intercourse; and hence each is bound to respect the rights of the other. All trick and deceit, all concealment and duplicity, which seek to take advantage one of the other, are vicious and immoral. Considering the wants and circumstances of both, each must stand upon the ground of a fair and honest equivalent in the bargain made.

6. *A wilful breach of the contract on one side releases from obligation on the other.* If one has been injured by the violation of the contract, in the neglect or wrong-doing of the other, he has not only a claim to redress by way of damages, but he has the right to say whether the contract has not itself thus become worthless to him, and that he may claim a full release from it. He may take his option, to be indemnified in damages, or in the annulling of the contract.

7. *Neither party may take advantage of his own wrong-doing.*

A violation of the contract in any way, by one, leaves it solely at the option of the other how to get his redress. The wrong-doer cannot plead his breach of the contract to attain any benefit on his part.

8. *Neither party can bind his children beyond their minority.* The tie of consanguinity may lay claims upon a child after his parents' decease, and thus more manifestly after the child's majority in the parents' life-time. It may be incumbent upon the child to do and sacrifice much to rescue a parent's character and memory from reproach ; but this is from the permanent ethical claim of blood-descent. The child would degrade himself in allowing the stain to rest on his ancestor. It cannot originate in any contract the parent has made. The child, at his majority, must have all the independent prerogatives of a man that the father has, or one generation enslaves another. When a new generation comes on, it must stand as free as the predecessor in making its contracts ; and the people of the last cannot be bound by the first, to be made either masters or servants. A man may legally direct his property so as to bind his heirs after his decease, but his children's servitude, or mastership, must be of their own free controlling.

The above may be applied as the principles which are to regulate in all cases of voluntary servitude, and which will determine all specific duties and claims. The rights on each side will, in these, be duly guarded, and the ethical claims of each enforced.

SECTION II. *Involuntary Servitude.* This is where the person is held to service without his consent, and thus no contract is made. The will of one party is not consulted, but he is under duress, and constrained to serve. Several such cases may be named, as *equitable* compulsory servitude, but which do not strictly come under the authority of the family. The state is the controlling sovereign ; and if the service be rendered in the family, it is wholly under the direction of the state authority.

1. *The demerit of crime.* Compulsory service may ethically be demanded of the criminal, either as penalty for his crime, or as contributing to his support while he is undergoing confinement as a penalty. Principles of equity and humanity are to determine the amount and kind of labor, and whether some portion of the proceeds should not go to the comfort of his needy family; but the state may rightfully enforce labor and service from the criminal, without regarding at all his own consent.

2. *The claim of debt.* One man has received that which belongs to another, and as thus indebted, he is bound to render a full equivalent. It might be considered in the light of a broken contract, for when the debt was contracted there was, expressed or implied, the promise to pay. But in whatever way bound, the creditor has now a righteous claim, and it may be pressed to liquidation without regard to the will of the debtor. If no other means of pay exist, his personal services may be exacted. The creditor has the right, under the authority of civil law, to coerce payment by compulsory labor.

3. *The exaction of pauper labor.* If the state is responsible for the support of its poor members, it has also the right of coercing their services against their consent, so far as these may be made to minister to the diminution of the poor-rate. The state may not make gain, and raise a revenue from their compulsory labor, nor violate any claim of humanity; but the state may compel the idle and dissolute to labor towards their own support.

4. *Captives taken in war.* The capturing power is bound, on all principles of humanity and morality, to support in comfort the prisoners it has taken in war, who shall be unable to pay for their own support. This, as in the case of pauper-labor above, gives the right to coerce servitude to the extent of the prisoner's support. Morality does not tolerate war and captivity as a source of gain, and thus a right of possession and property

in the prisoner; but as bound to maintain while a prisoner, so the nation may exact services of the prisoner to that end.

In all the above cases, the state may sell the services to individuals, and may thus give over the right to exact, to the extent to which this right is possessed by itself. But in none of the above cases is this exacted servitude any matter of family authority. If the family have the service, it must be bought of the state, and all right of control and coercion is only by state transfer.

Under the head of Family Government, aside from the parental authority which commands and controls the child, and exacts services without consent for the great ends of the family institution, there is but one case of involuntary servitude which can be contemplated, viz.: **DOMESTIC SLAVERY**. This has many more difficulties attending its consideration than any of the above cases. The conflicting interests, prejudices, political party arrangements, and general public excitement in reference to its evils, and the different methods of redress, all have united to complicate and embarrass the subject, and render it for the present almost hopeless of any determination in which there shall be harmony of conviction and action. And yet the great principles of family government, and the ends to be subserved by it, are as readily applied to domestic slavery as to voluntary servitude or parental authority over children. So far as slavery is a domestic institution, it must be determined, in its morality, by the ends for which the family exists, and be justified or condemned accordingly.

1. *The nature of domestic slavery.* This is quite distinct from all voluntary service, inasmuch as that is founded upon contract, but this contemplates service without consent,—labor from compulsion. A definition, which will embrace all modifications of domestic slavery, is *the exacting of personal services without consent*. It controls without contract. It directs the action of the servant at the will of the master, and treats him as incapacitated from forming and executing his own choices.

*2. The ground on which domestic slavery becomes righteous.* This absolute control over the service of another is completely righteous, as a domestic arrangement, when it is kept fully within the ends for which the family has been instituted. The family is the nursery for man, to train him up for civil freedom and piety. The race is to be perpetuated and nurtured from generation to generation in lawful wedlock, and not through promiscuous cohabitation, because thus the freedom and piety of the race can be best promoted. It is this fact which gives its ethical validity to parental authority ; and the same fact, actually existing in any case, will give equal validity to the authority of the head of the household as the master of his slaves. So long as it is most subservient to their preparation for the rights of citizenship, and the blessedness of heaven, so long it will be their duty to be obedient to their master for righteousness' sake. There is here one ground of subjection to family authority, to the child and to the slave, and while they both stand on that ground, the master's authority over his slave is as righteous as his authority over his child.

But this domestic arrangement of master and slave must stand solely on this ground, of subserviency to civil freedom and to pious worship, or it becomes an immorality. No man has the right to lord it over his servant, and control his services at his own pleasure, without regard to the choice of the servant, except upon precisely the same principles that give him this authority over his child. The child is born within the jurisdiction of such authority, and thus comes naturally under the principle ; the slave may or may not be so born. But whether born in the master's house, or bought with his money, the only end that can ethically justify his control over him is, that he sustain that relation, and exert that authority, solely to the end of his preparation for state citizenship somewhere, and for heaven. Not at all the consideration of the master's profit or pleasure, but the highest public freedom and piety, can alone make domestic slavery stand square with the claims of morality.

It is quite important here to see how the whole Jewish code of legislation, on the subject of slavery, followed out this principle. It never omitted the end of civil freedom, where that was attainable ; and never, on any occasion, the end of piety. It justified itself perpetually by keeping within righteous domestic principle, and seeking the end for which the family itself was instituted.

*It recognized no right to slavery among the heathen.* If a slave fled from a Pagan master, and would dwell in the Holy Land, there was the prohibition to deliver up the fugitive. “Thou shalt not deliver to his master the servant who hath escaped from his master to thee : He shall dwell with thee, even among you in that place which he shall choose in one of thy gates where it liketh him best : thou shalt not oppress him.”

DEUT. xxiii. 15, 16.

*It prohibited all Hebrew slavery except by contract.* A Hebrew servant might be bought, but with such contract only to the next coming year of release. “If thou shalt buy a Hebrew servant, six years he shall serve, and in the seventh he shall go out free for nothing.” Ex. xxi. 2. “And if thy brother, a Hebrew man or a Hebrew woman, shall be sold to thee, and serve thee six years, then in the seventh year thou shalt let him go free from thee.” DEUT. xv. 12. If he became a perpetual servant, it was at his own agreement. “And if thy servant shall plainly say, I love my master, my wife, and my children ; I will not go out free : Then his master shall bring him to the Judges ; he shall also bring him to the door, or to the door-post : and his master shall bore his ear through with an awl ; and he shall serve him for ever.” Ex. xxi. 5, 6. See, also, DEUT. xv. 16, 17.

*It permitted national Gentile slavery as a commutation for death.* The Canaanites were doomed to death, by God, for their idolatry, after waiting for the filling up of their iniquity from the days of Jacob. “But in the fourth generation they shall come hither again, for the iniquity of the Amorites is not yet full.”

**GEN. xv. 16.** "And when the Lord thy God shall deliver them before thee, thou shalt smite them and utterly destroy them: thou shalt make no covenant with them, nor show mercy to them." **DEUT. vii. 1, 2.** "But of the cities of these people which the Lord thy God doth give thee for an inheritance, thou shalt save alive nothing that breatheth." **DEUT. xx. 16 to 18.** By deceit some of them made a covenant under which they were spared, but were upon detection made perpetual national bond-men. "And Joshua that day made them hewers of wood and drawers of water for the congregation, and for the altar of the Lord, even to this day, in the place which he should choose." **JOSH. ix. 3 to 27.**

*It allowed domestic slavery by purchase from Gentiles.* This was the only source of family slavery. "Both thy bond-men, and thy bond-maids, which thou shalt have, shall be of the heathen that are around you, of them shall ye buy bond-men and bond-maids. Moreover, of the children of the strangers that sojourn among you, of them shall ye buy, and of their families that are with you, which they begat in your land, and they shall be your possession." **LEV. xxv. 44 to 46.** Such as were already in heathen bondage they might *buy*, but it was a capital offence to *kidnap*. "And he that stealeth a man, and selleth him, or if he shall be found in his hand, he shall surely be put to death." **EX. xxi. 16.** This transferred from Paganism to the privileges of a true religion.

*The slave was allowed full religious privilege.* Circumcision. "He that is born in thy house, and he that is bought with thy money, must needs be circumcised; and my covenant shall be in your flesh for an everlasting covenant." **GEN. xvii. 12, 13.** The Sabbath. "But the seventh day is the Sabbath of the Lord thy God, in it thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, *thy man-servant, nor thy maid-servant*, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates." **EX. xx. 10.** The passover. "But every man's servant that is bought for money, when thou hast circumcised him, then shall he eat thereof."

**Ex. xii. 44 to 49.** The temple service and sacred feasts. “And thou shalt rejoice before the Lord thy God, thou, and thy son and thy daughter, *and thy man-servant and thy maid-servant*,—in the place which the Lord thy God hath chosen to put his name there.” **Deut. xvi. 11.** In solemn national covenant. “Ye stand this day all of you before the Lord your God,—your little ones, your wives, and the stranger that is in thy camp, *from the hewer of thy wood to the drawer of thy water*, that thou shouldst enter into covenant with the Lord thy God.”

**Deut. xxix. 10, 12.**

*If he was maimed by violence he was made free.* “And if a man shall smite the eye of his servant, or the eye of his maid, that it shall perish, he shall let him go free for his eye’s sake. And if he shall smite out his man-servant’s tooth, or his maid-servant’s tooth, he shall let him go free for his tooth’s sake.”

**Ex. xxi. 26, 27.**

*If he was killed outright by his master, the master was punished.* “And if a man shall smite his servant or his maid with a rod, and he shall die under his hand, he shall surely be punished.” **Ex. xxi. 20.**

The fact that if he survived the injury two or three days, the master was not punished, “because he was his money,” verse twenty-first,—is the least easily reconciled with the general principle, of any regulation given. The fact that he was “his money,” might indicate that it was not to be inferred that there was the intent to kill; and that in the uncertainty of the occasion of the death, the whole matter was to be left to the judgment of God.

It may not be certain, though it is probable, that the slave had the same privilege of becoming a proselyte that any free Gentile had; and thus at his own option, as a convert, he would come into all the privileges of an Hebrew of the Hebrews, and go out of his bondage at the next year of release. It is probable, also, that the Gentile as well as the Jewish slave had his

liberty at the jubilee. "Ye shall hallow the fiftieth year and proclaim liberty throughout all the land, to all its inhabitants." **LEV. xxv. 10.** All Jewish slaves were free every seventh year by the special statutes before cited. **EX. xxi. 2; DEUT. xv. 12.** This really leaves none but Gentile slaves to have the special benefit of the fiftieth year freedom, for the Jewish slaves were already provided for in the seventh year of release, and the Gentile slaves are manifestly recognized as properly citizens and inhabitants in the above transactions of Deut. xxix. 10, 12. The interpretation of Lev. xxv. 45, 46, is thus to be a permission perpetually to make bond-men of Gentile descendants in every generation, but not that any one Gentile man and his children should be perpetual slaves. Every slave was made free at the year of jubilee.

His whole training in a Hebrew family would be thus fitting him for the rights and duties of a citizen. And under all circumstances, the Jewish law kept the great end of piety as fully in view to the master for his slave, as to the father for his son. Take the whole condition of a Pagan bond-man, and view him as transferred by purchase to a Hebrew master, and how great the change for the better, both politically and religiously !

3. *The ground on which domestic slavery becomes unrighteous.* The only end for which the master may hold slaves, morally, has been given ; but it may often occur that one man may control the services of another, in fact, for quite another end. The only one supposable is some private interest. The authority is exerted for some personal gratification not for public freedom nor piety. On such ground the domestic institution, as embracing slavery, is immoral, and all its authority an unrighteous usurpation. The particular definition of slavery, on the former ground, would be — exacting service without consent, *but solely for the end of highest freedom and piety.* The particular definition, on the latter ground, is — exacting service without consent, *for the master's own pleasure.* The immorality of this form of domestic slavery is made manifest in the usurpation and tyranny

of the authority. Liberty of choice, in object and execution, is every man's birthright ; restrained only by that which is due to the same right in all. There is admitted no partial prerogatives ; but as man, every one is alike free and alike restrained. All men may do what they please, if only each one will regard, in his pleasure, this same right in all others, and restrain his choices by the freedom of all. But the principle of this form of slavery makes the individual pleasure supreme. One man gratifies his own choice, and discards wholly the right of choice in another. It annihilates the imperatives of morality in public freedom by its own selfishness.

Still further, it overrides all the claims of piety. Piety can only be in freely worshipping and serving God according to the dictates of conscience. It is complying with the impulse of man's spiritual being, in its conscious dependence, to go out in reverence and confidence to God, according to the honest conviction of the claims that God makes. The end of all family authority, beyond political freedom, is the cultivation of such piety. But this form of slavery discards utterly all such claims, moral and Divine, and puts the pleasure of the master above conscience and religion. It assumes to do what morality can never permit may be done. Responsibility to personal claims of conscience is inalienable. Personality may not renounce its prerogative and become a thing. The slave may not consent to surrender it ; the master may not arrogate to assume it. One cannot give it, the other can not take it, without guilt. Neither consent nor force can effect such a transfer. Immutable morality still holds every man by the imperatives of his own conscience ; and yet this form of the institution assumes to accomplish all this ethical impossibility by the mere contradictory pleasure of the master. No possible assumption of authority can be more tyrannical or immoral.

All domestic slavery which controls the slave for *the pleasure of the master* is most abhorrent to virtue.

It may also be important to see how the Christian Scriptures view this form of domestic slavery. We have already examined the Jewish law of the Old Testament, and found its provisions agreeing substantially with the true ends of the family institution, and thus resting upon a moral basis. So slavery might be, and be righteous. But the Christian Scriptures manifestly refer to the latter form of slavery, where the services were controlled at the will, and for the pleasure of the master. It was Grecian and Roman slavery to which the Apostles allude, in the several epistles to Christian Churches, which we shall examine. In what light is this form of slavery regulated in the Gospel?

*It enjoins emphatically obedience to the master.* "Servants, be obedient to them that are your masters according to the flesh, with fear and trembling, in singleness of your heart, as to Christ; Not with eye-service as men-pleasers; but as the servants of Christ, doing the will of God from the heart." *Eph. vi. 5 to 8.* And to the same purport see *Col. iii. 22 to 25.* "Let as many servants as are under the yoke count their own masters worthy of all honor, that the name of God and his doctrine be not blasphemed." *1 Tim. vi. 1.* "Exhort servants to be obedient to their own masters, and to please them well in all things; not answering again; Not purloining, but showing all good fidelity, that they may adorn the doctrine of God our Saviour in all things." *Titus, ii. 9, 10.* "Servants, be subject to your masters with all fear, not only to the good and gentle, but also to the froward. For this is thank-worthy, if a man for conscience towards God endure grief, suffering wrongfully. For what glory is it, if when ye be buffeted for your faults, ye shall take it patiently? but if when ye do well, and suffer for it, ye take it patiently, this is acceptable with God. For even hereunto were ye called because Christ also suffered for us, leaving us an example that ye should follow his steps." *1 Pet. ii. 18 to 20.* This obedience was by no means required, on the ground that the slavery was righteous, and the master's authority morally

valid. It would be more prudent for the slave to obey, and tend most to cultivate his piety. He was required to be obedient, "not only to the good and gentle, but also to the froward"; even obedient where cruelty and wickedness led to the "buffeting" of the slave for "doing well." It was expedient to obey; just as when you cannot escape from a tiger, it is expedient not to provoke him. It by no means justifies the usurped authority. It was better for the slave to obey; and especially it would serve to augment piety, and recommend the religion of Him, who in his humiliation was smitten and "opened not his mouth."

*It requires masters to reciprocate the same spirit.* "Do the same things to them,"— "forbear threatening,"— "give to the slave that which is just and equal." EPH. vi. 9; COL. iv. 1. The Christian master was no more to provoke a froward slave, than the Christian slave was to disobey a froward master; and the wicked authority of the master is no more sustained by the injunction in one case, than is the wicked spirit of the slave by the injunction in the other.

*A slave was to take his freedom if he could.* "Art thou called being a servant? care not for it; but if thou mayest be made free, use it rather. For he that is called in the Lord, being a servant, is the Lord's freeman; likewise, also, he that is called, being free, is Christ's servant. Ye are bought with a price; be not ye the servants of men. Brethren, let every man, wherein he is called, therein abide with God." 1 COR. vii. 21 to 24. The great thing was his Christian redemption; he need not much mind his bondage to his master, compared with the unspeakable prerogative in that he was now "the Lord's freeman." Still, if he might be free, that was desirable. "Use it rather." Fully condemning the relation as unrighteous, on the part of the assumed authority of the master. Had it been on the ground that the slave's culture in social and political duties was best subserved by remaining in such a domestic arrange-

ment, and that his piety was there best promoted,—the only ends that could justify the relation,—we should certainly have had no such direction. It would have been as irrelevant to the slave as to the child. Both ought to stay under the authority, till the end of the cultivation has been attained.

When we add to all this the most affecting direction of Paul to Philemon, in sending his fugitive slave Onesimus to him, converted and pious, and expressly saying “not now as a slave, but above a slave, a brother beloved”; and also, all the *general principles* of the Gospel bearing on this assumption to use one man for another man’s pleasure; as in the parable of the good Samaritan; the golden rule; the command to self-denial for other’s good, etc.; we cannot fail to see that any form of domestic slavery, which assumes to control the slave for the master’s pleasure, is as truly condemned by our Saviour as it is abhorrent to humanity.

Slave emancipation had been effected in many cases by civil authority, and in different states of the American Union, but in the year 1863 slavery was virtually abolished in the United States by the proclamation of President Lincoln, as a war-measure in suppressing the civil conflict then raging; and the growing spirit of benevolence, freedom, and humanity had been since steadily at work for expelling slavery from all lands. It does yet, however, widely prevail in the world, and the cause of morality demands still the clear expression of its claims, and especially the distinctions between justifiable and forbidden forms of domestic servitude, that the right and wrong of household slavery may be everywhere fully apprehended.

It will not be difficult in any community, where the institution of domestic slavery is established, to determine on which basis it rests, and is supported and defended. The laws which define and regulate it, the customs and habits engendered by it, the practises constantly prevailing under it, will make patent the life and spirit of the system; and accordingly as it keeps within and

suberves, or overrides and discards, the great end of the family, will it be approved or condemned by the stern rule of immutable morality.

Some individual cases of men there may be, who fully conform to the claims of morality and Christianity in the spirit and principle of their domestic arrangement, both as to children, voluntary servants, and slaves, while the public institution of slavery, as it is known in the law, sustained in the state, and practised by the mass of families in the community, is utterly vicious and immoral. The institution, as having its basis and support in state authority, and controlled by laws which coerce the slave to the master's pleasure, without coercing the master to the legitimate ends of family government, may be wholly immoral, and also wholly unchristian ; and every family, which includes slaves on such a principle, will also be vicious ; and yet, in such a community, and under such a jurisdiction, it is possible that families may be, where the involuntary servitude of their members is wholly righteous and justified both by pure morality and revealed Christianity. The head of the family may have no other end than the elevation of the servant, and his preparation for heaven ; and the servant may, as a fact, be in the best condition to improve his humanity and his piety of any to which the master can introduce him ; and where these things are so, the relation of master and servant is as legitimate by morality and Christianity, as is the relation of parent and child.

The law of the land may give to the master prerogatives and authority over his servant, which he would by no means use ; and it may fasten obligations and responsibilities upon him, in reference to his servant, which he can never justify as ethically binding ; and even hold the slave to alternatives, in the death or misfortunes of the master, which both the master and the servant disapprove and regret, but which neither have any power to change ; yet if both master and servant are controlling their own conduct by the ends of all family government, they

may both be very much pitied, under these imposed state liabilities, but they can neither be morally nor scripturally condemned. With the parties, it is a righteous family arrangement, and a virtuous connection of master and servant, though the political aspect is that of unrighteous slavery.

A short summary of duties, in reference to all that may have any connection with a system of slavery as here presented, may be thus given :

**I. IN REFERENCE TO THE MASTER.**

1. The master is bound to relinquish, at once, all claim to control his servant merely for the ends of his own interest or pleasure, and immediately to renounce any assumed right to interfere with the dictates of conscience.

2. He is bound to give to the slave the same freedom that he himself possesses, so soon as the ends for which slavery may righteously exist in the domestic institution have been attained. These ends consist in the training of the slave for the duties of the citizen and the Christian.

3. Where these ends are not yet attained, it is the duty of the master to hasten them as directly and as diligently as possible.

4. Until such attainment is secured, the master is bound, to a proper degree, by the duties of household baptism, religious nurture, and mental instruction, as really towards his slave as towards his child.

5. Where the man faithfully fulfils such duties, the law of the land may unrighteously coerce to the relationship of master and slave, but it is the master's misfortune and not his sin.

**II. IN REFERENCE TO THE SLAVE.**

1. The slave must obey his master, for the sake of expediency and prudence, where the commands do not clash with the convictions of conscience.

2. The slave must suffer his injuries meekly and patiently, though not bound to admit them to be righteous.

3. He should keep the freedom of his conscience, and resolutely refuse to violate its dictates even unto death.

4. He should seek and take his freedom by all means not denied by prudence and conscience.

5. If running away is prospective of less evil than staying in slavery, it is right to run. The laws which masters may make, to restrain from flight, have no other moral force upon the slave than that of prudential consideration.

### III. IN REFERENCE TO OTHER PERSONS.

1. All are bound to compassionate, benevolently to regard, and to pray for both the master and the slave.

2. Every man in the community is bound to exert his influence, in a wise and prompt manner, and as occasion may offer, both by speech and act, through the press and legislation, to abolish the unrighteous system of slavery as soon as possible.

3. As opportunity occurs, all ought to enlighten, persuade, and reprove the unrighteous slaveholder, but with neither railing nor denunciation.

4. All should help the slave to regain his freedom in all ways not criminal. The law of the land may bind the citizen where it could not righteously restrain the slave. The one is legitimately under authority, the other is not.

5. All should insist upon the right of free discussion, and the application of general principles to practice, in the matter of slavery as on every other topic. A man becomes a traitor to the rights of humanity when he renounces his claims to free inquiry and discussion.

# Philosophy.

---

## *Empirical Psychology; or, The Human Mind as*

*Given in Consciousness.* By LAURENS P. HICKOK, D.D., LL.D. Revised with the coöperation of JULIUS H. SEELEY, D.D., LL.D., President of Amherst College. 12mo. 300 pages. Mailing Price, \$1.25; Introduction, \$1.12; Allowance, 40 cts.

Hickok's "Science of the Mind," which has been in the hands of teachers and students for more than a quarter of a century, has been here wholly revised, and almost wholly re-written, making it not only a new text-book but a new contribution to the important science of which it treats. The precision of statement and thoroughness of treatment which so remarkably characterized the original work, and made it so highly prized by so many teachers, are no less conspicuous in the present work; but a different method in the general discussion has been adopted, though the end originally sought is the same.

The publishers believe that the book will be found to be remarkably comprehensive, and at the same time compact and clear. It gives a complete outline of the Science, concisely presented, and in precise and plain terms.

**John Bascom, Pres. of Univ. of Wisconsin, Madison :** It is an excellent book. It has done much good service, and, as revised by President Seelye, is prepared to do much more. (Feb. 3, '82.)

delineation of the mental faculties so clear and accurate that the careful student will hardly fail to recognize its truth in his own experience.

(April 6, 1882.)

**I. W. Andrews, Pres. Marietta Coll., Ohio :** I am glad to see that this work holds its place among our text-books on that most important subject. Dr. Hickok I regard as one of the ablest of our philosophical writers, and few teachers have had so large and successful an experience as President Seelye. This new edition, carefully revised by these two gentlemen, may be confidently recommended as presenting a

**M. Valentine, Pres. and Prof. of Intellectual and Moral Science, Pennsylvania Coll., Gettysburg :** I take pleasure in saying that the new edition impresses me very favorably. This work of Dr. Hickok is unquestionably one of high ability and much merit, and, by its close analysis and compact, orderly classifical of the mind's powers, admirably suited for use as a text-book. Its value is increased in this edition. (Jan. 28, '82.)

## PHILOSOPHY.

**Geo. W. Williard, Pres. of Heidelberg Coll., Ohio** : A most valuable contribution to the Science. (Feb. 1, '82.)

**F. W. Bartlett, Prof. Mental and Moral Philosophy, Lewis Coll., Northfield, Vt.** : The Mental and the Moral Science are both admirable for their perspicuity and powerful grasp of the subject. (Jan. 26, 1882.)

**J. B. Helwig, Pres. Wittenberg Coll., Ohio** : The edition by Professor Seelye will doubtless be adopted for the next class. Dr. Hickok's books have occupied a prominent place in our college work for a quarter of a century past, and we find no reason to displace them yet. (Jan. 6, 1882.)

**Oliver Arey, Prin. of Cleveland Normal School, Ohio** : The Mental and Moral Sciences are the only works that properly present the subjects upon which they treat. I have used them many years, and always have been able to secure intelligent results by their use. Dr. Seelye has aided in maturing the original thought as given by Dr. Hickok, so that in their present form more comprehensive results can be secured. (Jan. 17, 1882.)

**Lemuel Moss, Pres. of Indiana Univ.** : Dr. Hickok is a master in Philosophy, and his statements and discussions are profound, compact, clear, and suggestive. (Jan. 13, 1882.)

### PRESS NOTICES.

**The London Tablet** : This work is extremely comprehensive in its extent and embrace. The style adopted is one of extreme simplicity, and utterly devoid of every attempt at being ornate. There is a certain peculiarity in the mode of expression which may almost be called originality, but which is, at all events, sufficient to commend the writing to the attention of those for whom philosophical treatises have a special charm. They will certainly recognize this volume as the product of no ordinary minds. The absence of all endeavor to make a display must ensure respect.

**"X." in Springfield Republican** : In style, the work is changed for the better, while the nice and precise use of words for which Dr. Hickok was always noted is retained. We specially notice the simplicity of all definitions. Many new illustrations taken from the more recent scientific discoveries have been added, but the whole work has been so systematized and condensed as to be brought within a much smaller compass. As a text-book it is clear,

compact, comprehensive, with difficulties enough to stimulate thought, but not so great that any diligent student need despair of surmounting them. We heartily commend it to all students and teachers of psychology.

**The American, Phila.** : Dr. Hickok has shown more promptness and readiness to adapt his method to the new demands of the age than any other American philosopher we know of. The first edition of this work proceeded in the method of the Scotch school, taking as its basis the common consciousness of mankind. The second accepts "asserted scientific experiment" as an equally safe and generally more satisfactory guide, since it enables the student of empirical psychology to carry his study of the facts into higher regions than the flat prairie over which the disciples of Reid and Hamilton roam. The book has been almost wholly rewritten, with the help of President Seelye, and we know of no other, in our American literature of the subject, which deserves to be ranked beside it.

**Springfield Republican:** As revised and rewritten with the coöperation of President Seelye, it has become essentially new in respect of its clear, concise, compact, and orderly arrangement, as well as its larger inductions from scientific trial-proofs of the alleged facts of common consciousness. It is not only an admirable text-book for students, but a fascinating and profitable hand-book for all thinkers. The objection which has been laid to the account of Dr. Hickok's earlier works, and supposed to be a chronic difficulty, of an obscure nomenclature, is done away in this book.

**Christian Register, Boston:** We have convinced ourselves that the earlier parts of this book contain much keen analysis of sensuous and intellectual states and faculties.

**Evening Post, Hartford:** As the work alone of Prof. Hickok, it had a strong and increasing support among educators, but with President Seelye's coöperation and scholarship made prominent in the revision, the future of the treatise will be one of greater success than ever.

**Golden Rule, Boston:** It abounds in keen, clear, and concise analyses of the points discussed. It is a book admirably adapted for the college classroom.

**Churchman, N.Y.:** As an introduction to the study of the higher metaphysics, and as designed for use in the class-room, the work is one which will be found equal, in nearly all respects, to what is required.

**Observer, N.Y.:** It presents the most satisfactory view of psychology within our reach.

**Zion's Herald, Boston:** In its present form it will continue to command the patronage it has so deservedly earned.

**Wis. School Journal:** All teachers should be familiar with mental science, and we know of no better work to commend to them. It is a very readable book; clear, compact, and comprehensive, remarkably free from the abstractions and obtuseness which are features of so many works of this class.

**School Bulletin, N.Y.:** This is in every way an excellent book, and will put the subject within the reach of many classes which have hitherto shrunk from larger and more pretentious treatises.

**Church Union, N.Y.:** The conciseness and clearness for which Dr. Hickok's writings are preëminent render them especially adapted as text-books.

## Hickok's Moral Science.

By LAURENS P. HICKOK, D.D., LL.D. Revised with the coöperation of JULIUS H. SEELYE, D.D., LL.D., President of Amherst College. 12mo. Cloth. 288 pages. Mailing Price, \$1.25; Introduction, \$1.12; Allowance, 40 cts.

This work is an entire and careful revision of Hickok's original text-book of Moral Science. The remarkable excellencies of that book, unsurpassed as it is in systematic rigor and scientific precision,

are carefully retained in the present edition. Many parts of the book have, however, been rewritten entirely, modifying the original statements where this was necessary for clearness, and adding new discussions where this was necessary for fulness. To the many teachers who have used the original text-book with such signal profit, the publishers confidently commend this new and revised edition; and with equal confidence they offer it to others who would like a manual in which the principles of morality are expounded in a manner as truly simple as it is thoroughly scientific.

**A. P. Peabody, Prof. of Christian Morals, Harvard Coll.:** Permit me to express my very high appreciation of the value of the work. I read it when it first appeared with the greatest interest and satisfaction, and in its present form it possesses whatever added claims the most skilful and careful editorship can give. Had it appeared a month earlier, should more probably than not have adopted it.

**G. P. Fisher, Prof. of Church History, Yale Coll.:** I have long wanted to see just such a book,—one in which practical ethics should be clearly and systematically and philosophically presented. I am very much pleased with the chapters relating to duties, and not less so with the more theoretical portion of the work. The style is so perspicuous, and at the same time so concise, that the work is eminently adapted to serve as a text-book in colleges and higher schools. In matter and manner it is a capital book, and I wish it God speed.

**C. B. LaHatte, Pres. Methodist Coll., Gainesville, Ga.:** It comes nearer to my idea of perfection than any work I have seen.

**Eliphalet Nott Potter, Pres. of Union Coll., N.Y.:** The book is one which I re-read every year with renewed appreciation.

**C. B. Hulbert, Pres. Middlebury Coll., Vt., and Prof. of Moral Science:** In its present form it is the best of recently issued text-books on Moral Science.

**A. A. H. Taylor, Pres. of Univ. of Wooster, Ohio, and Prof. of Biblical Instruction:** It is a capital text-book for the class-room, fully abreast of the ethical controversies of the day.

**I. W. Andrews, Pres. Marietta Coll., O., and Prof. of Intellectual Philosophy:** It is sound, strong, and clear. I doubt whether any work on Moral Science surpasses this in the depth and permanence of the impression made upon the student. It requires study, of course, but it will repay the student, whether teacher or pupil. The part relating to duties to the State is admirable for its fulness and precision.

**N.Y. Tribune:** A large portion of the volume is devoted to the practical details of conduct in the manifold development of social and civil life. In this respect it is not surpassed by any popular manual of ethics. . . . The present work, with those by which it is accompanied, mark a new departure in American philosophical speculation, and entitle the author to an eminent rank among its representative minds and its practical guides and authorities.

**The N. E. Journal of Education:** Taken altogether, it is an admirable text-book, and we can cordially recommend it for use wherever pupils are old enough to consider morality in a scientific way, or to discuss intelligently the fundamental principles of civil government. No subjects are more vitally necessary in public education, and this volume presents them in a clear, compact, and forcible manner.

### Rational Psychology; or, The Subjective Idea

*and Objective Law of all Intelligence.* By LAURENS P. HICKOK, D.D., LL.D. 543 pages. 8vo. Mailing Price, \$1.95. Introduction, \$1.80.

### Creator and Creation; or, The Knowledge in the

*Reason of God and His Work.* By LAURENS P. HICKOK, D.D., LL.D. 360 pages. 8vo. Mailing Price, \$1.75. Introduction, \$1.60.

### The Logic of Reason, Universal and Eternal.

By LAURENS P. HICKOK, D.D., LL.D. 192 pages. 8vo. Mailing Price, \$1.60. Introduction, \$1.44.

### Humanity Immortal; or, Man Tried, Fallen, and

*Redeemed.* By LAURENS P. HICKOK, D.D., LL.D. 362 pages. 8vo. Mailing Price, \$1.75. Introduction, \$1.60.

These books discuss the most difficult and important problems of human thought. Though each is complete in itself, they pursue the following order: —

The EMPIRICAL PSYCHOLOGY gives the basis of all physical and logical science.

The RATIONAL PSYCHOLOGY connects all science with philosophy.

The CREATOR AND CREATION gives the philosophy of all mechanical and vital forces.

The MORAL SCIENCE is already in the field of philosophy, and gives the basis of Aesthetics, Politics, Ethics, and Theology.

The LOGIC OF REASON frees empiricism from all scepticism in the attainment of a Being absolutely Universal and Eternal.

The HUMANITY IMMORTAL gives the Divine history of human experience from its origination to its consummation.

# HEBREW LESSONS.

---

By H. G. MITCHELL, PH.D., OF BOSTON UNIVERSITY.

---

IT has long been the custom to introduce the beginner to some of the languages by simple, practical lessons. The acquisition of French and German, even Greek and Latin, has thus been rendered not only easy, but delightful. Instructors in the less familiar languages have, however, for some reason, been slow to adopt the reasonable method. It is not strange, therefore, that a text-book for elementary instruction in Hebrew, answering the wants of beginners, "should still be considered a desideratum.

The author of the book here announced, after several years spent in instruction, has embodied the results of his experience in a series of lessons, by which, as has been abundantly proven, a learner can in a few weeks obtain a good foundation for the study of the Old Testament in the original. The possibility of this result will appear upon a glance at the plan of these lessons:

1. They are confined to the elements of the language.
2. They are arranged in logical order.
3. They are illustrated and enforced by abundant exercises from the Bible.
4. They require a vocabulary comprising almost all the most common words of the language.
5. They are supplemented by extended selections from historical books of the Bible, especially adapted to reading at sight, for which, however, the vocabulary suffices.

It is clear that by this plan the student is as quickly as possible made acquainted with the language, and placed in a position with comparative ease to become a Hebrew scholar.

Another point, hardly less important for beginners in Hebrew, is the typographical excellence of the work. It is printed with the utmost care for accuracy and distinctness, from very large, clear type, imported expressly for the purpose.

The book has been examined and cordially endorsed by many of the most competent judges, and is already in extensive use.

---

*Retail and Mailing Price, \$2.00.*

---

**GINN, HEATH, & CO., Publishers.**

BOSTON.

NEW YORK.

CHICAGO.

# A STUDY OF THE DRINK QUESTION,

ENTITLED

## “THE FOUNDATION OF DEATH.”

---

By AXEL GUSTAFSON. 600 pp. 12mo. RETAIL AND  
MAILING PRICE, \$2.00.

---

This book has already been accepted in England as the most complete work on the subject ever published, and one that will be “the Bible of temperance reformers for years to come.” It is pronounced the fairest, most exhaustive, freshest, and most original of all the literature on the subject that has yet appeared. It is impartial and careful in its evidence, fair and fearless in its conclusions, and its accuracy is vouched for by the best physiologists and physicians.

In preparation for this work, the author has made exhaustive and impartial researches in the alcohol literature of nearly all countries, having examined, in the various languages, some three thousand works on alcohol and cognate subjects, from a large proportion of which carefully selected quotations are made.

The scope of the work, as to the variety of standpoints from which it is treated, is indicated in the following list of chapters:—

- I. Drinking among the Ancients.
- II. The History of the Discovery of Distillation.
- III. Preliminaries to the Study of Modern Drinking.
- IV. Adulteration.
- V. Physiological Results; or, The Effects of Alcohol on the Physical Organs and Functions.
- VI. Pathological Results; or, Diseases caused by Alcohol.
- VII. Moral Results.
- VIII. Heredity; or, The Curse entailed on Descendants by Alcohol.
- IX. Therapeutics; or, Alcohol as a Medicine.
- X. Social Results.
- XI. The Origin and Causes of Alcoholism.
- XII. Specious Reasonings concerning the Use of Alcohol.
- XIII. What can be done?

GINN, HEATH, & CO., Publishers.

# Latin Text-Books.

	INTROD. PRICE.
ALLEN & GREENOUGH: Latin Grammar . . . . .	\$1.12
Latin Composition . . . . .	1.12
Cæsar (four books, with vocabulary) . . . . .	1.12
Sallust's Catiline . . . . .	.60
Cicero, 13 orations (or 8 orations with vocabulary) . . . . .	1.12
Cicero de Senecte . . . . .	.50
Ovid (with vocabulary) . . . . .	1.40
Virgil (Bucolics and 6 Books of the <i>Aeneid</i> ) . . . . .	1.12
Preparatory Course of Latin Prose . . . . .	1.40
ALLEN . . . . .	
Latin Primer . . . . .	.90
New Latin Method . . . . .	.90
Introduction to Latin Composition . . . . .	.90
Latin Reader . . . . .	1.40
Latin Lexicon . . . . .	.90
Remnants of Early Latin . . . . .	.75
Germania and Agricola of Tacitus . . . . .	1.00
BLACKBURN . . . . .	
Essentials of Latin Grammar . . . . .	.70
Latin Exercises . . . . .	.60
Latin Grammar and Exercises (in one volume) . . . . .	1.00
CROWELL . . . . .	
Selections from the Latin Poets . . . . .	1.40
CROWELL & RICHARDSON: Brief History of Roman Lit. (BENDER) . . . . .	1.00
GREENOUGH . . . . .	
Virgil:—	
Bucolics and 6 Books of <i>Aeneid</i> (with Vocab.) . . . . .	1.60
Bucolics and 6 Books of <i>Aeneid</i> (without Vocab.) . . . . .	1.12
Last 6 Books of <i>Aeneid</i> , and <i>Georgics</i> (with notes) . . . . .	1.12
Bucolics, <i>Aeneid</i> , & <i>Georgics</i> (complete, with notes) . . . . .	1.60
Text of Virgil (complete) . . . . .	.75
Vocabulary to the whole of Virgil . . . . .	1.00
GINN & HEATH . . . . .	
Classical Atlas and Geography (cloth) . . . . .	2.00
HALSEY . . . . .	
Etymology of Latin and Greek . . . . .	1.12
KEEP . . . . .	
Classical Wall Maps (three or more), each . . . . .	3.50
KING . . . . .	
Essential Uses of the Moods in Greek and Latin . . . . .	.25
LEIGHTON . . . . .	
Latin Pronunciation . . . . .	.25
MADVIG . . . . .	
Latin Lessons . . . . .	1.12
PARKHURST . . . . .	
Latin Grammar (by Thacher) . . . . .	2.25
PREBLE . . . . .	
Latin Verb . . . . .	.35
STICKNEY . . . . .	
Exercises for Translation into Latin . . . . .	.10
WHITE, (J. W.) . . . . .	
Cicerio de Natura Deorum . . . . .	1.40
WHITE, (J. T.) . . . . .	
Schmidt's Rhythmic and Metric . . . . .	2.50
Junior Student's Latin-English Lexicon (mor.) . . . . .	2.00
(sheep) . . . . .	2.25
English-Latin Lexicon (sheep) . . . . .	1.75
Latin-English and English-Latin Lexicon (sheep) . . . . .	3.00
WHITON . . . . .	
Auxilia Vergiliiana; or, First Steps in Latin Prosody . . . . .	.15
Six Weeks' Preparation for Reading Cæsar . . . . .	.35

*Copies sent to Teachers for Examination, with a view to  
Introduction, on receipt of Introduction Price.*

**GINN, HEATH, & CO., Publishers.**

BOSTON.      NEW YORK.      CHICAGO.

# GREEK BOOKS.

---

							INTROD. PRICE.
ALLEN :	Medea of Euripides	-	-	-	-	-	\$1.00
FLAGG :	Hellenic Orations of Demosthenes	-	-	-	-	-	1.00
	Anakreontea	-	-	-	-	-	.35
GOODWIN :	Greek Grammar	-	-	-	-	-	1.50
	Greek Reader	-	-	-	-	-	1.50
	Greek Moods and Tenses	-	-	-	-	-	1.50
GOODWIN & WHITE :	First Four Books of Xenophon's Anabasis, and Vocabulary	-	-	-	-	-	1.50
	Selections from Xenophon and Herodotus	-	-	-	-	-	1.50
HARDING :	Greek Conditional Sentences	-	-	-	-	-	.05
KEEP :	Essential Uses of the Moods in Greek and Latin	-	-	-	-	-	.25
LEIGHTON :	New Greek Lessons	-	-	-	-	-	1.20
LIDDELL & SCOTT :	Greek Lexicon. Unabridged	-	-	-	-	-	9.40
	Abridged	-	-	-	-	-	1.90
SEYMOUR :	Selected Odes of Pindar	-	-	-	-	-	1.40
SIDGWICK :	Greek Prose Composition	-	-	-	-	-	1.50
TARBELL :	Philippics of Demosthenes	-	-	-	-	-	1.00
TYLER :	Selections from the Greek Lyric Poets	-	-	-	-	-	1.00
WHITE :	First Lessons in Greek	-	-	-	-	-	1.20
	Oedipus Tyrannus of Sophocles	-	-	-	-	-	1.12
	Stein's Summary of the Dialect of Herodotus	-	-	-	-	-	.10
	Schmidt's Rhythmic and Metric	-	-	-	-	-	2.50
WHITON :	Orations of Lysias	-	-	-	-	-	1.00

*Copies sent to Teachers for Examination, with a view to  
Introduction, on receipt of Introduction Price.*

---

**GINN, HEATH, & CO., Publishers.**

BOSTON. NEW YORK. CHICAGO.

## Books on English Literature.

		INTROD. PRICE.
<b>Allen</b>	Reader's Guide to English History	\$ .25
	History Topics	.25
<b>Arnold</b>	English Literature	1.50
<b>Carpenter</b>	Anglo-Saxon Grammar	.60
	English of the XIVth Century	.90
<b>Church</b>	Stories of the Old World (Classics for Children.)	.40
<b>Crank</b>	English of Shakespeare	.90
<b>Garnett</b>	Beowulf ( <i>Translation</i> )	1.00
<b>Harrison &amp; Sharp</b>	Beowulf ( <i>Text and Glossary</i> )	1.12
<b>Hudson</b>	Harvard Edition of Shakespeare:— 20 Vol. Edition. <i>Cloth, retail</i>	25.00
	10 Vol. Edition. <i>Cloth, retail</i>	20.00
	Life, Art, and Characters of Shakespeare. 2 vols. <i>Cloth, retail</i>	4.00
	New School Shakespeare. <i>Cloth. Each play</i>	.45
	Old School Shakespeare, per play	.20
	Expurgated Family Shakespeare	10.00
	Essays on Education, English Studies, etc.	.25
	Three Vol. Shakespeare, per vol.	1.25
	Text-Book of Poetry	1.25
	Text-Book of Prose	1.25
	Pamphlet Selections, Prose and Poetry	.20
	Classical English Reader	1.00
<b>Hudson &amp; Lamb</b> : Merchant of Venice	(Classics for Children.)	.25
<b>Hunt</b>	Exodus and Daniel	.60
<b>Lambert</b>	Robinson Crusoe (Classics for Children.)	.35
<b>Lounsbury</b>	Memory Gems	.30
<b>Minto</b>	Chaucer's Parliament of Foules	.50
	Manual of English Prose Literature	2.00
<b>Sprague</b>	Selections from Irving { <i>Cloth.</i> <i>Boards.</i>	.35 .25
<b>Thom</b>	Two Books of Paradise Lost, and Lycidas	.45
<b>Yonge</b>	Two Shakespeare Examinations	.45
	Scott's Quentin Durward. (Classics for Children.)	.40

*Copies sent to Teachers for Examination, with a view to  
Introduction, on receipt of Introduction Price.*

**GINN, HEATH, & CO., Publishers.**

**BOSTON.**      **NEW YORK.**      **CHICAGO.**

